

## Technical Commission Report

$$
\text { Q1 of } 2024
$$

Author: Technical Commission

| Document type | Report |
| :--- | :--- |
| Subject of Report | Activity of the TEC Commission for the Q1 2024 |
| Document <br> version | 1.0 |
| Date | March 27th, 2023 |

## Contents

Contents ..... 2
Scope of the report ..... 3
Summary ..... 3
Internal Organization ..... 3
Endorsements ..... 5

1. Chess Online Pairing Program ..... 5
2. Video Assisted Refereeing ..... 6
3. Clono Electronic Scoresheet ..... 7
4. Chess NoteR ..... 8
Exercises in Tie-Breaking ..... 9
Changing in C. 04 Regulations ..... 10
Projects in progress ..... 11
Tournament Portal Specifications ..... 11
Team Pairing System ..... 12
DGT Live Improvements ..... 12
ANNEXES ..... 13

## Scope of the report

This report represents a detailed presentation of the activity of the Technical Commission [TEC] of FIDE in Q1 2024.

## Summary

In the first three months of 2024, TEC continued the projects and activities started in2023. We have two types of activities:

- Recurrent ones, such as endorsement processes or assisting other people in technical aspects of chess.
- Developing efforts, consisting in improving the regulations, as well as developing new projects.


## Internal Organization

TEC commission has 23 members, including chairman, honorary chairman, secretary, councilors and members.

| No. | Position | Surname | Name | Federation | Email |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | Chair | Georgescu | Tiberiu | Romania | tiberiu.georgescu@frsah.ro |
| 2 | Honorary | Chair | Filipowicz | Andrzej | Poland |
| 3 | Secretary | Du Toit | Hendrik | South Africa | filipowicz38@gmail.com |
| 4 | Councilor | Ricca | Roberto | Italy | ricca@rrweb.org |
| 5 | Councilor | Brustman | Agnieszka | Poland | abrustman@gmail.com |
| 6 | Councilor | Pahlevanzadeh | Mehrdad | Iran | pahlevanzadeh@outlook.com |
| 7 | Councilor | Al Taher | Sultan Ali | UAE | sultahir77@hotmail.com |
| 8 | Member | Akkour | Abdelfattah | Morocco | akkour@gmail.com |
| 9 | Member | Oen | Grant | USA | grant@charlottechesscenter.org |
| 10 | Member | Ni | Hua | China | nihua531@hotmail.com |
| 11 | Member | Nicula | Dinu-loan | Romania | nicudin004@yahoo.com |
| 12 | Member | Prohorov | Olexandr | Ukraine | prohorov@chessclub.lviv.ua |
| 13 | Member | Burstein | Almog | Israel | almogbu@walla.com |
| 14 | Member | Keles | Askin | Turkey | askinkeles@gmail.com |
| 15 | Member | Arasu | B. | India | arasub@gmail.com |
| 16 | Member | Milvang | Otto | Norway | sjakk@milvang.no |
| 17 | Member | Mushaninga | Fungirayiini | Zimbabwe | fungimush1999@gmail.com |
| 18 | Member | Held | Mario | Italy | mario.hev@gmail.com |
| 19 | Member | Nepando | Jolly | Namibia | jollynepando@gmail.com |
| 20 | Member | Karali | Tania | Greece | tkaral@ |
| 22 | Member | Smith | Russell | Trinidad \& Tobago | seepoysmith@yahoo.com |
| 23 | Member | Abramov | Sergey | Russia | chessokcom@gmail.com |


| No. | Department | Head of department | Workgroups |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | SPP | Roberto Ricca | Pairing regulations |
|  |  |  | Tie-break regulations |
|  |  |  | Software for SPP |
| 2 | Critical TEC | Mario Held | Board, Pieces \& Clocks |
|  |  |  | Venue Requirements Commission |
|  |  |  | Broadcast technologies |
| 3 | Support TEC | Mushaninga Fungirayiini | Digitalization - extern |
|  |  |  | Digitalization - internal FIDE procedures (assisting other commissions) |
| 4 | Development TEC | Arasu B. | Strategic Digitalization |
|  |  |  | Developing advanced technologies for capturing games by active collaboration with companies (scoresheets, e-boards, gadgets with AI) |
|  |  |  | Ensuring compatibility across technologies and e-platforms |
| 5 | Management | Chairman \& Secretary | Management Board |
|  |  |  | Management and Procedure Workgroup |
| 6 | Marketing \& communication | Tania Karali | Communication \& Promotion |
|  |  |  | Website \& Social Media |

The Management Board is composed of:

- Chairman - Tiberiu Georgescu
- Honorary Chair - Andrzej Filipowicz
- Secretary - Hendrik du Toit
- Councillors - Roberto Ricca, Agnieszka Brustman, Mehrdad Pahlevanzadeh, Sultan Ali Al Taher
- Head of Departments - Roberto Ricca, Mario Held, Mushaninga Fungirayiini, Arasu B., Dinu Ioan-Nicula (as head of Management and Procedure Workgroup) and Tania Karali.


## Endorsements

While doing endorsement for new products, we identified some new challenges posed by innovative chess software solutions (or hardware solutions that include software).

These solutions bring to the table new dimensions which can help improving the chess community. However, due to the innovative character of this products, we observed that often the FIDE handbook doesn't include all the necessary amendments.

Below are described the main efforts regarding endorsement processes performed by TEC in Q1 2024.

## 1. Chess Online Pairing Program

The Chess Online Pairing Program (COPP) underwent evaluation for FIDE endorsement, with version 7.7 and build number 1230. The application process commenced on July 5, 2023, and a subsequent submission on December 8th refined identification details. COPP operates as an online service, hosted on the https://chessresults.ru/en1 site, and underwent adaptation for FIDE endorsement via a virtual machine provided to the endorsement committee (PICOTE). This virtual machine, identical to the main server, serves as a reference for testing and demonstration purposes.

COPP aligns with FIDE requirements for managing Swiss tournaments. It offers an English language interface, supports the FIDE Data Exchange Format for file import/export, and provides free pairing checker (FPC) and simulated tournament generator (RTG) functionalities. These services, crucial for tournament management, enhance COPP's suitability for FIDE endorsement.

The evaluation of COPP was conducted according to Appendix A of Section C.04, focusing on adherence to FIDE regulations for tournament management software. COPP's FIDE mode, essential for endorsement, encompasses various functionalities outlined in the Verification Check-List (VCL). The program must ensure correct behaviour in pairingrelated services, adhere strictly to pairing rules, and implement FIDE-endorsed acceleration systems, among other requirements.

Despite minor weaknesses highlighted during evaluation, such as potential risks associated with adjusting scoring systems post-import, COPP demonstrates overall compliance with FIDE standards. The evaluation acknowledges COPP's efforts to meet FIDE's stringent criteria, recommending minor improvements to enhance user
understanding and experience.
In conclusion, COPP version 7.7 with build number 1230 merits FIDE endorsement. The comprehensive evaluation report, compiled by Roberto Ricca, recommends COPP's addition to the FIDE Endorsed Programs list pending approval by the Technical Commission. This endorsement will validate COPP's suitability for facilitating Swiss tournaments in accordance with FIDE regulations.

## 2. Video Assisted Refereeing

The document "Video Assisted Refereeing (VAR) in Chess" provides an in-depth examination of the integration and implications of VAR technology within the realm of chess. It begins with an introduction highlighting the transformative potential of VAR in enhancing fairness, accuracy, and integrity in chess, akin to its impact in physical sports. The document elaborates on the unique challenges faced in implementing VAR in chess due to the decentralized system of arbiters and the nature of the disputes that arise during games.

## Key points covered include:

Purpose and Vision: Emphasizing the ambition to integrate technological advancements for promoting fair play and precision in chess, aiming to mitigate human observational errors that could influence game outcomes.

Challenges in Chess: Outlining the distinct challenges in applying VAR in chess, such as move accuracy verification, time control management, fair play enforcement, and handling technical issues.

Expectations for Implementation: Acknowledging that while VAR is a powerful tool, it is not a panacea for all issues in chess tournaments. It aims to solve touch-move disputes, support arbiters in decision-making, and necessitates a gradual, phased enhancement post-initial implementation.

VAR Technology Overview: Describes the technical setup involving mobile phone cameras for capturing games, a central processing system for data aggregation, and specialized software for analysis and decision support.

Ethical Considerations: Stresses the importance of maintaining the game's integrity, transparency in VAR's application, consistency, and the balance between technology use and human oversight.

Player Rights and Responsibilities: Discusses the framework for players' rights to appeal and their responsibility to uphold sportsmanship in light of VAR decisions.

Protocols for VAR Usage: Explains the necessity for a controlled VAR system by the tournament organizer, highlighting the advantages in terms of integrity, bias avoidance, and regulatory compliance.

Arbiter Training on VAR: Outlines the objectives and content of training programs for arbiters, focusing on understanding and efficiently operating the VAR system within ethical guidelines.

The document also suggests amendments to chess regulations to accommodate VAR technology legally, emphasizing a respectful balance between innovation and the game's traditional values. It concludes with recommendations for gradual implementation, further development, and the necessity for comprehensive training and awareness among all tournament stakeholders.

## 3. Clono Electronic Scoresheet

In September 2021, the Technical Commission appointed experienced testers, including Agnieszka Brustman, Almog Burstein, and Sandeep Singh, to assess the Clono electronic scoresheet. Overall, testers provided positive feedback but highlighted concerns. They emphasized the need for organizers to provide tablets to players to prevent cheating, advocated for the optional use of Clono, and noted challenges for older players. Sandeep Singh raised alarms about potential cheating through replicated Clono apps. The Commission faces unresolved issues such as formatting Clono printouts for easy transfer to PGN, creating paper protocols for game results, and addressing emerging challenges in anti-cheating measures.

However, as new electronic scoresheet was endorsed, we identified a series of necessary changes in regulations that need to be addressed.

## 4. Chess NoteR

The Technical Commission's evaluation report proposed and approved by FIDE Council in February 2024 scrutinizes ChessNoteR devices by "Black Mirror Studio" for FIDE tournaments. Testing two models, ChessNoteR N6 and N9, it assesses functionality, compliance with FIDE regulations, and practical usage. Urgent actions, like device approval, are recommended, along with enhancements for tournament management and foul play prevention. The report emphasizes compliance with FIDE rules, suggesting features for accuracy and convenience. It concludes with controlled use test cases and references. Overall, it offers insights into the devices' suitability for official tournaments and proposes measures for their effective implementation.

After the decision was made by FIDE Council, TEC received several concerns regarding regulation interpretation. Both the vendor, as well as other persons were interested to know if the players can bring their own electronic scoresheet to be used in official tournaments and in which conditions. TEC came back with an official answer, but we are working on improving the Handbook on the use of electronic scoresheets conditions.

## Exercises in Tie-Breaking

In August 2023, the FIDE Council endorsed new guidelines for playoffs and tiebreaks, introducing significant modifications, including the removal of the virtual opponent concept and a comprehensive overhaul in handling unplayed games and matches. The document produced by IA Mario Held is designed to facilitate understanding of the updated rules by providing practical examples for applying them across different tiebreak systems, serving not merely as reading material but as a practical exercise toolkit to enhance rule familiarity after initial study. In real-world tournaments, tie-breaks are resolved through a series of steps; for ease of explanation, this text treats each system as the primary method of tie-breaking.

The suggested approach for readers is to tackle the exercises sequentially as they appear, armed with the tournament crosstable and the official FIDE technical regulations on playoffs and tiebreaks (C.07), cited throughout the text in brackets ("[ ]"). Attempting the exercises independently before reviewing the solutions and referenced rules is recommended. This guide is structured to be approachable for novices familiar with the basic concepts it depicts, introduced in an incremental fashion, while also offering value to more advanced readers through a recommendation to review even the most basic scenarios to not overlook potentially insightful details.

Lastly, it's noted that the C. 07 regulations encompass all chess tie-breaks, despite some being of debatable merit, leaving it to event organizers to select or potentially create new tie-break methods

## Changing in C. 04 Regulations

The document outlines changes to chess's Swiss system rules, focusing on bye allocations and simplifying the pairing process. Notably, a player cannot receive a pairing-allocated bye after a forfeit win or equivalent scenario.

The FIDE (Dutch) system's modifications include the removal of "collapsed" score groups and adjustments in wording for clarity. New criteria, such as minimizing the assignee of the pairing-allocated bye's score, have been introduced to ensure fairness.

These changes streamline the system, making rules clearer and aligning the bye allocation process with other systems, reflecting a move towards a more simplified and equitable approach in chess tournament organization.

## Projects in progress

## Tournament Portal Specifications

The document titled "Tournament Entry Portal - Functional Specification" details the planning and development of an online system to manage entries into FIDE (The International Chess Federation) tournaments. Authored by IA Hendrik du Toit in November 2023, the report outlines the project's aims to transition from manual to automated systems for registering chess players and managing events. The portal intends to simplify the entry process for players, streamline registration for various tournament formats, and enhance event management features, including accommodation and travel arrangements.

Challenges identified include the inefficiency of current manual processes, the lack of a centralized registration system, and the need for standardized processes across FIDE's global tournaments. The document lists primary objectives, such as eliminating manual systems, developing an official registration platform, and optimizing registration processes to improve efficiency and standardize procedures.

Key requirements for the portal include comprehensive functionality for tournament management, integration with existing FIDE systems, and ensuring user accessibility and data security. The document also addresses contact information management, manual contract inefficiencies, and outlines roles and responsibilities across different FIDE commissions and technical teams.

Additionally, the specification covers the scope of the project, expected impacts, stakeholder involvement, technical considerations, testing and deployment strategies, support and training needs, future enhancements, and a phased approach for development. It concludes with a list of potential third-party vendors and proposals from managed events companies, suggesting a comprehensive and collaborative effort to bring the project to fruition before the Chess Olympiad in 2024.

## Team Pairing System

The SPP department, with Roberto Ricca in charge, presented to ARB, QC and Rules commissions the key aspects of Team Pairing systems that needs to be improved.

The discussion around the Swiss Team Pairing System involves focusing on refining and approving the system for better clarity, effectiveness, and fairness in chess tournaments. Key points include concerns over the Handbook style guide, differences from Olympiad rules, and the lack of examples for tournament pairings.

There's an urgent call to finalize changes to the FIDE (Dutch) System rules, prioritized over the Team Pairing rules due to scheduling constraints for implementation.
Feedback highlights the document's readability for software developers versus arbiters, the method for top-down pairings, and the arbiter's discretion in pairing anomalies. There's also a debate over the calculation of the Team Points Number (TPN), with suggestions for predefined methods to prevent manipulation by organizers.

Some advocate for a uniform method to calculate average ratings, while others see value in allowing organizers to choose from predefined options or even devise new ones to suit specific tournament needs, emphasizing flexibility and acknowledging the variety of existing practices and software capabilities.

## DGT Live Improvements

Our efforts consist in identifying critical bugs and usability issues encountered in the digital chess platform LC2, compared to its predecessor, LC1.4 and address to the DGT company representative to solve them. Key problems include unexplained results appearing in PGN files without corresponding entries in the program's logs, mismatches between moves listed in 'History' and 'Game' tabs, and an unresponsive 'Events' tab despite evident game issues.

The usability section emphasizes difficulties in managing and monitoring 50+ chessboards connected to a single PC, such as non-sortable columns, non-updatable diagrams, and lack of immediate clock and battery status indicators. Further issues include the cumbersome process for setting game results, high memory consumption, and the absence of a delay feature for game broadcasts, which compromises fairness and compatibility with platforms like Chess.com.

The feedback suggests improvements like reintroducing icons for board monitoring, streamlining game correction processes, and implementing a reliable delay feature to enhance user experience and operational efficiency.

## ANNEXES

Endorsement Report of Chess Online Pairing Program
Exercises in Tie-Breaking
Changing in C. 04 Regulations
Tournament Portal Specifications

# CHESS ONLINE PAIRING PROGRAM (COPP) <br> <br> OFFICIAL REPORT 

 <br> <br> OFFICIAL REPORT}

The FE-1 application of the Chess Online Pairings Program (COPP, from now on) was submitted on July 5, 2023, for the version 7.7. At that time there was no other visible sub-number accompanying the product to allow its identification, nor was it retrievable. An updated application was then submitted on December $8^{\text {th }}$, and this time a build number (1230) was mentioned that would identify the product described here.

COPP (this description was prepared by the COPP's author) is built into the https://chessresults.ru/en ${ }^{1}$ site and operates as an online service. In order to pass the FIDE endorsement process, COPP has been copied to a virtual machine which is similar with the main site/server.

Such a virtual machine has been delivered to the people in charge of the endorsement (PICOTE, from now on) and is stored on the PICOTE's machine. Thus, in addition to being a very precise reference to what was tested by the PICOTE (and the source of the corresponding recommendation), it can also be shown to FIDE personnel who may be interested.

The evaluation of COPP was done using the virtual machine and following what is written in Appendix A of Section C. 04 (Endorsement of a software program), and in particular what is written in Article A. 2 (reported below), which is a sort of driver for the whole endorsement process.

## Note. All references to the Pairing Systems and Programs Commission, or SPPC, should be read as referring to the Technical Commission, or TEC, which has assumed the functions of the former SPPC.

Each author of a program that helps to manage a chess tournament can apply for the FIDE endorsement by submitting an FE-1 form (see Annex-1).
For an endorsement application to be considered, the program must be able to manage Swiss tournaments using the FIDE (Dutch) System (see C.04.3) or any other pairing systems approved by FIDE (see C.04.4.1-3). The endorsement is given for the specific pairing systems (one or more).
Any program asking for endorsement should provide (explicitly or implicitly) a FIDE mode, which should offer all the functionalities and services required by FIDE for a tournament-managing program to be endorsable (see below).
The program is to be endorsed in the FIDE mode.
Moreover, it must provide the following services:

- an English language interface
- the capability to import and export files coded in the FIDE Data Exchange Format (see A.3.1 and Annex4)
- the public availability of a (free) pairings checker (FPC - see A.4)
- the public availability of a (free) generator of simulated tournaments (RTG, see A.5), unless exempted by

[^0]the System of Pairings and Programs Commission (SPPC)

- the possibility to be checked in a controlled environment
- the compliance with all the requirements presented in the Verification Check List (see Annex-4)

The applicant should consider that merely complying with all the aforementioned requirements is not enough to receive a FIDE endorsement.

The FIDE mode may also offer additional services or functionalities, provided that they are not explicitly prohibited by FIDE, on condition that those services and functionalities may not cause pairing mishaps for FIDE mode users.
If, during the period of validity of the endorsement (see A.8), a breach of the above conditions is reported to the SPPC, and verified by the Commission, the endorsement may be immediately suspended (pending further investigation) or permanently revoked. In the latter case, the program reverts to the status of a new program to endorse.

Let us examine COPP point-by-point.

| Each author of a program that helps to <br> manage a chess tournament can apply <br> for the FIDE endorsement by <br> submitting an FE-1 form (see Annex-1). | The FE-1 application was sent on July $5^{\text {th }}, 2023$ and resent on <br> December $8^{\text {th }}$. |
| :--- | :--- |
| For an endorsement application to be <br> considered, the program must be able to <br> manage Swiss tournaments using the <br> FIDE (Dutch) System (see C.04.3) or <br> any other pairing systems approved by <br> FIDE (see C.04.4.1-3). The <br> endorsement is given for the specific <br> pairing systems (one or more). |  |
| Any program asking for endorsement <br> should provide (explicitly or implicitly) <br> a FIDE mode, which should offer all | The FIDE mode is automatically provided at the creation of a <br> the functionalities and services required <br> by FIDE for a tournament-managing <br> program to be endorsable (see below). <br> The program is to be endorsed in the |
| For more details see VCL.01. |  |
| FIDE mode. |  |

- the public availability of a (free) pairings checker (FPC - see A.4)
- the public availability of a (free) generator of simulated tournaments (RTG, see A.5), unless exempted by the System of Pairings and Programs Commission (SPPC)
- the possibility to be checked in a controlled environment
- the compliance with all the requirements presented in the Verification Check List (see Annex-4)
The FIDE mode may also offer additional services or functionalities, provided that they are not explicitly prohibited by FIDE, on condition that those services and functionalities may not cause pairing mishaps for FIDE mode users.

As COPP uses the JaVaFo pairing engine (more details later), these services are provided through JaVaFo.

Since the program runs on a website, it is the antithesis of a controlled environment. However, as mentioned above, a virtual machine (with a server installation) was provided and tests could be run on it with the Internet switched off.
The verification check-list will be thoroughly commented later.

COPP includes the ability to define custom accelerated systems, manual introduction or modification of pairings, extensive customization of non-standard scoring systems, and forbidden pairings (more details later).

Verification Check-List (VCL)

| 01 | the FIDE mode must be the default <br> operating mode of the software | When a new tournament is created, it is created in FIDE mode. <br> After being warned that they cannot come back to FIDE mode after the first <br> round has been paired, users can switch to a Custom mode. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 02 | it ought to be possible to enter the <br> FIDE mode by a standard <br> installation of the tournament <br> manager, as well as by a standard <br> invocation of the program | This is properly dealt with (see VCL.01). <br> This item can be deemed inapplicable, the reason being that the program runs on <br> a website, so the only possible starting action is the creation of a new <br> tournament. |
| 03 | the default pairing system activated <br> by a standard invocation must be <br> the one for which the program is <br> endorsed and it must be clearly <br> specified -however, if the program <br> is endorsed for more than one <br> pairing system, the standard <br> invocation should activate one of <br> the systems for which the program <br> is endorsed | By default, tournaments are created for the FIDE (Dutch) System, called "Swiss <br> (Dutch)". <br> No other pairing system can be used while in FIDE mode. |

$\left.\begin{array}{|l|l|l|}\hline 04 & \begin{array}{l}\text { every pairing-related service } \\ \text { available in the FIDE mode must } \\ \text { show a correct behaviour }\end{array} & \begin{array}{l}\text { This is quite a wide field for COPP. } \\ \text { The default scoring system is } 1 / 1 / 2 / 0 \text {, but it is possible to define any scoring } \\ \text { system, provided that the number of points assigned for wins (and full-point } \\ \text { byes), draws (and half-point byes), and over-the-board losses be between } 0 \text { and } \\ \text { 9.9 (at most one decimal), points for a win be greater than points for a draw, } \\ \text { which by themselves are greater than points for a loss. Also, two draws cannot } \\ \text { be worth more points than a win plus a loss, forfeit losses and zero-point byes } \\ \text { are always zero. It is not possible to define a different number of points } \\ \text { depending on the colour. } \\ \text { Pairings can be freely changed by the arbiter after the program has generated } \\ \text { them. }\end{array} \\ \hline 05 & \begin{array}{ll}\text { By default, zero-point byes are given to announced absent players (or manually } \\ \text { defined by the arbiter). Then full-point byes (after proper warning) or half-point } \\ \text { byes can be manually assigned to those players. } \\ \text { COPP allows to define forbidden pairings. It is unclear whether this is formally }\end{array} \\ \text { allowed, but the program works correctly when they are present. }\end{array}\right\}$

| 12 | the exporter in the TRF format (version TRF16) must be done in such a way that the output can be correctly analyzed by a pairing-checker, even when a different scoring point is used - it is recommended that such export is done using UTF-8 encoding | COPP can perform a TRF export at any time during the tournament, not only at the end. When the TRF export is performed at the right moment, it follows the TRF16 specification and it complies with the VCL request (tests were performed in tournaments where the $3 / 2 / 1 / 0$ scoring system was used and where the score assigned to the PAB was draw -2 points). |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | When an export is made before the end of the tournament (or when there are still adjourned games), it is possible that its contents do not conform to the TRF16 specification, but no warnings will be given to indicate such a situation. Basically, it is up to the user to verify that the TRF export can be used as a proper rating report. |
|  |  | The ability to export a tournament according to the TRF specification is not mentioned in the COPP manual as a way to export a tournament. |
| 13 | management of unusual results (like $1 / 2-0,0-1 / 2$ or an unforfeited 0 0 ) must be available; on the other hand, inconsistent scores (like 1-1/2 or 1-1) are not allowed | COPP provides a list of possible scores, and only scores from that list can be entered. All of them are ok. <br> It is also possible to enter "quick" (or "unrated") scores, which are mapped in the TRF with $\mathrm{W}, \mathrm{D}$, and L codes. |
| 14 | possible forfeit results are only: 1F-0F, 0F-1F, 0F-0F - forfeit draws are not allowed | This is properly dealt with. |
| 15 | adjourned or postponed games (if allowed by the program) must be managed properly | A game may be marked as " $\mathrm{A} 1 / 2-\mathrm{A}^{1} / 2$ " (meaning adjourned). In this case, it is considered a draw for the pairing phase. A result must be entered before pairing the second round after the round in which the adjournment occurred. |
| 16 | it must be possible to define the value (usually win or draw) for the pairing-allocated bye | This is properly dealt with (also loss is allowed). |
| 17 | it must be possible to assign half-point byes; if the software allows the assignment of full-point byes: upon assignment, a warning must be issued, stating that this practice is deprecated by FIDE | This is properly dealt with. Players can be declared absent, and then their score for the round (which is zero by default) can be set to half a point, or even, after a warning that full-point bye assignments are deprecated by FIDE, to a full point. |
| 18 | the program should make the official FIDE rating list readily available; or, failing that, it should offer adequate facilities for an arbiter that would like to use it | This is formally dealt with. However, from a practical standpoint, the management of the FIDE rating lists in COPP is rather lackluster. At any moment, depending on the type of time-control chosen (standard, rapid, blitz), there is only one FIDE rating list available, which is automatically updated by the server every day. The user has no control over this list and cannot use private lists. Basically, in order to enter ratings that are not available on that single list, the user has to look at external sources and enter the ratings manually. |
| 19 | all tie breaks included in the pairings software will be tested and must give the results as per the rules described in the FIDE Handbook | Ignored for now (will be evaluated in 2025). <br> This item was added to the VCL way too early, when not all tie-break rules were clearly defined, and when the lack of automated tools capable of verifying tiebreak implementations allowed only vanilla tests whose results were not meaningful enough. |

## Analysis of (supposed) weaknesses

The previous examination, with its coloured evaluation, already shows what the PICOTE considers to be the weaknesses of COPP. Green, of course, is a pass, Yellow is close, Rose is something that could be better.
Green or Yellow evaluations do not require further comment.
Regarding Rose:
(a) (a) (VCL.05) Adjusting the scoring system or the number of rounds after importing is dangerous because it may result in wrong pairings for the imported rounds - yes, as already said, it is a necessary evil to allow partial TRF import (which is useful for intercommunication between endorsed programs) and it helps to bypass a problem that FIDE itself should address (i.e. partial TRF import); nonetheless, since this is first an evaluation from a pairing standpoint, this is a warning that it is better to emphasize.
(b) (VCL.12) Let's face it, the TRF export is not evaluated in the same way by COPP's author and the PICOTE, so the program does not really help its users to understand how to differentiate a full rating report from a partial TRF export.
(c) (VCL.18) What the PICOTE considers an issue (and the COPP author apparently does not) is already described in the evaluation of the item; the management of rating lists is in Rose rather than something worse, simply because the endorsement rules are still more focused on pairings (see Article C.04.A.2) than on what is said in Article C.04.A. 1 (To manage big Swiss tournaments, the use of computer programs, to handle players' data, pairings and results, is necessary).

## CONCLUSION

The product, identified by version number 7.7 and build number 1230, deserves to be endorsed by FIDE.

Since this report will be submitted directly to Congress, there is no need to issue an interim certificate. Therefore, if this report is approved, COPP can be added to the FIDE Endorsed Programs list at the first opportunity.

This report is to be annexed to the minutes of the Technical Commission meeting.

Torino, December 11 ${ }^{\text {th }}, 2023$


IA Mario Held

## EXERCISES IN

## TIE-BREAKING

## Contents

1 Foreword ..... 4
2 The crosstables ..... 5
2.1 Swiss individual tournament crosstable ..... 5
2.2 Round-robin individual tournament crosstable ..... 5
2.3 Swiss team tournament crosstable ..... 6
PART ONE -INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS ..... 10
3 Tie-breaks based on Buchholz system and similar ..... 10
3.1 Buchholz (total) ..... 10
3.2 Buchholz Cut-1 ..... 15
3.3 Average Buchholz of opponents ..... 20
3.4 Fore Buchholz ..... 22
4 Tie-breaks with Sonneborn-Berger and Koya systems ..... 24
4.1 Sonneborn-Berger for Swiss tournaments. ..... 24
4.2 Sonneborn-Berger in round-robin tournaments ..... 29
4.3 Koya System ..... 30
5 Tie-break systems based on rating and performance ..... 32
5.1 Average Rating of opponents (ARO) ..... 33
5.2 Performance rating in the tournament (TPR) ..... 35
5.3 Average performance rating of opponents (APRO) ..... 38
5.4 Perfect tournament performance (PTP) ..... 39
6 Tie-breaks based on direct encounter (DE) ..... 41
6.1 Direct encounter in Swiss tournaments. ..... 42
6.2 Direct encounter in round-robin tournaments ..... 44
7 OTHER TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS FOR INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS ..... 44
7.1 Number of wins (WIN) and Number of games won (WON) ..... 44
7.2 Number of games played with Black (BPG) and won with Black (BWG) ..... 46
7.3 Games one elected to play (GE) ..... 48
7.4 Sum of progressive scores (PS) ..... 49
PART TWO - TEAM TOURNAMENTS ..... 52
8 Match points versus game points (MPvGP) ..... 52
9 Sistema Buchholz (BH) ..... 53
10 Extended Sonneborn-Berger system for teams (ESB) ..... 56
10.1 The Olympiad tie-break ..... 61
11 EXTENDED DIRECT ENCOUNTER FOR TEAMS (EDE) ..... 62
12 Systems based on boards count ..... 65
12.1 Board count (BC) ..... 65
12.2 Top board results (TBR) ..... 66
12.3 Bottom board elimination (BBE) ..... 67
13 ScORES AND SCHEDULE STRENGTH COMBINATION (SSSC) ..... 68

## 1 Foreword

In August 2023, the FIDE Council approved the new regulations for playoff and tiebreak, which contains important changes, as for example the abolition of the virtual opponent and a deep change in the management of unplayed games and matches.

This paper aims to help study the new rules by supplying some practical examples of how they should be applied in a realistic context, for each tie-break system. This is not a paper you want to read or study, but a tool, a collection of exercises to solve after studying, to verify and perfect the comprehension of the rules.

In tournament practice, tie-breaking is carried out with a sequence of methods applied in succession until all the ties are resolved; here, for simplicity, we will always use the chosen system as the first tie-breaker.

As a methodology, the reader might want to follow the exercises in progression, in the order in which they are presented, keeping at hand a copy of the crosstable and of the FIDE regulations on technical play-offs and tie-breaks (C.07), to which all references in brackets ("[ ]") refer. It would be advisable to try to solve the exercise by yourself, and then compare the procedure and calculations with the given solution and the rules.

This paper aims to be accessible even to beginners, as long as they know the rules well enough that they can find there the basic ideas that the exercises illustrate, which we tried to introduce gradually. Even the more expert readers will probably find it advisable to read, at least briefly, even the simplest examples - even if they are already well familiar with the subject - so as not to lose any useful information.

We conclude by observing that C .07 regulations try to consider all the tie-breaks used in chess, even if the value of some of them may be questionable. The event organizer should choose which ones to use, or even possibly invent new ones.

Enjoy and good luck!

## 2 The CROSSTABLES

In order to help comparing the various systems, we use the same tournaments in all the examples, namely a Swiss and a Round-robin for individuals, and a Swiss for teams. The scoring system is the traditional one (zero points for a loss, half a point for a draw, one point for a win for single games; zero points for a loss, one for a draw and two for a win for team matches).

### 2.1 Swiss individual tournament crosstable

For convenience, the board is sorted by score (descending) and pairing number (i.e., initial ranking). Unplayed games are highlighted in red: the half-point requested byes (HPB) of David (\#4, second round) and Jessica (\#9, third round); the forfeit defeats of Paul (\#14, third round) and Jessica (\#9, fourth round); the justified absence (zero points bye, ZPB) of Paul (\#14, fourth round); the withdrawal of Nick (\#12, fourth round); the byes received from the pairing (PAB). Opponents with any kind of unplayed games are highlighted too (yellow background).

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | =W2 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = 77 | +W10 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 |

### 2.2 Round-robin individual tournament crosstable

For our convenience, this crosstable is presented both in the format traditionally used for round-robin tournaments and in the format typically used for Swiss tournaments. The first format highlights the forfeit defeat of Franck (\#6) in the fourth round, which in the "Swiss" format is not distinguishable because forfeit wins and losses are equivalent to played games in round-robin tournaments.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | $*$ | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | $1 / 2$ |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 3.5 | 0 | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | 0 | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1.5 | 1 | 0 | 0 | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | 0 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 1.5 | 0 | 0 | 0 | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | + |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 1.5 | $1 / 2$ | 0 | 0 | 1 | - | $*$ |


| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | -W5 | +W2 | +B3 | -W 4 | +B 6 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 3.5 | +W 6 | -B 1 | +W 5 | =W3 | +B 4 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | +W 4 | +B 6 | -W 1 | -B2 | +W 5 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1.5 | -B 3 | -B 5 | -W6 | +B 1 | -W 2 |
| 5 | Franck | 1950 | 1.5 | -B1 | +W 4 | -B 2 | -W 6 | -B 3 |
| 6 | Helene | 2000 | 1.5 | -B 2 | -W 3 | =B4 | +B 5 | -W 1 |

### 2.3 Swiss team tournament crosstable

Team tournaments have some characteristics that distinguish them from individual ones. The first and foremost is that each team has two scores, one relating to the points obtained in the match ("Match points", MP), and one relating to the players' points ("Game points", GP) [11.1]. Our Swiss tournament includes 14 teams, fielding 4 players each (credits: Roberto Ricca). We need the crosstables (individual and team) and the composition of each team; all this data is usually made available by the pairing software.

| $\#$ | TEAM | $\mathbf{M P}$ | $\mathbf{G P}$ | $\mathbf{R 1}$ | $\mathbf{R 2}$ | $\mathbf{R 3}$ | $\mathbf{R 4}$ | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | $8 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ | $4 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ | 7 w 3 | $2 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | $5 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | +F | $3 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 9 b 3 | 3 w 4 | 5 b 0 | $1 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | 13 w 3 | $4 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | 10 b 3 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ | 2 b 0 | 9 w 3 | $6 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | 4 w 3 | $5 \mathrm{~b} 3,5$ | $1 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 11 b 3 | $1 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ | 13 b 3 | $5 \mathrm{w} 3,5$ | 3 b 1 | $2 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | $9 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 12 w 4 | 6 b 3 | 2 w 4 | $4 \mathrm{~b} 0,5$ | $1 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | $3 \mathrm{w} 0,5$ | $13 \mathrm{~b} 3,5$ |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 13 b 2 | 5 w 1 | 8 b 3 | $3 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | $11 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | -F | $12 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 14 w 2 | 8 b 2 | 1 b 1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ | 9 b 2 | 13 w 2 | ZPB |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | $1 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ | 7 w 2 | 6 w 1 | $12 \mathrm{~b} 3,5$ | 10 b 2 | 9 w 2 | 11 w 3 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 2 w 1 | 12 b 4 | 3 b 1 | 14 w 3 | 7 w 2 | 8 b 2 | $4 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13 | $3 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ | $11 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | $12 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | $7 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ | 8 w 2 | 14 b 3 | 2 w 1 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 4 w 1 | $10 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | 14 w 2 | $13 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ | $6 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | 12 w 2 | 8 b 1 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 5 b 0 | 9 w 0 | $10 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | $8 \mathrm{w} 0,5$ | PAB | 11 b 2 | $6 \mathrm{~b} 1,5$ |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 6 w 2 | $14 \mathrm{~b} 2,5$ | 4 w 1 | $11 \mathrm{w} 2,5$ | 2 b 1 | 7 b 2 | $5 \mathrm{w} 0,5$ |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 7 b 2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 1,5$ | 11 b 2 | 9 b 1 | HPB | 10 w 1 | PAB |


| $\#$ | TEAM | PLAYERS |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{6}$ |  |
| 1 | Antelopes | 1 | 14 | 16 | 39 | 50 | 64 |  |
| 2 | Bonobos | 2 | 29 | 21 | 26 | 65 | 46 |  |
| 3 | Cougars | 3 | 25 | 32 | 20 | 58 | 54 |  |
| 4 | Deer | 4 | 11 | 9 | 68 | 48 | 70 |  |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 22 | 27 | 35 | 59 | 72 |  |
| 6 | Falcons | 18 | 13 | 41 | 38 | 53 | 63 |  |
| 7 | Giraffes | 5 | 17 | 44 | 45 | 42 | 77 |  |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 28 | 19 | 24 | 49 | 66 | 60 |  |
| 9 | Iguanas | 8 | 12 | 31 | 79 | 61 | 67 |  |
| 10 | Jackals | 6 | 30 | 47 | 57 | 74 | 83 |  |
| 11 | Koalas | 33 | 23 | 43 | 52 | 78 | 73 |  |
| 12 | Lynxes | 15 | 40 | 51 | 69 | 75 | 84 |  |
| 13 | Moose | 7 | 56 | 36 | 80 | 76 | 82 |  |
| 14 | Owls | 34 | 55 | 37 | 62 | 71 | 81 |  |


| ID | T | PLAYER | ELO | NP | PT | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1 | Armando Aglio | 2110 | 5 | 6,0 | 28w1 |  | 05w1 | 02b1 | 10w1 | 18b+ | 03b1 |
| 2 | 2 | Bernardo Berci | 2105 | 6 | 3,0 | 08b1 | 03w1 | 10b0 | 01w0 |  | 11b0 | 30b1 |
| 3 | 3 | Carlo Cohen | 2100 | 7 | 4,0 | 06w1 | 02b0 | 08w0 | 18b1 | 04w1 | 10b1 | 01w0 |
| 4 | 4 | Diego De La Vega | 2096 | 4 | 2,0 | 33b0 |  | 56b1 |  | 03b0 |  | 08b1 |
| 5 | 7 | Gregor Gewiss | 2091 | 5 | 2,0 | $34 \mathrm{w}=$ | $28 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 01b0 | 06w1 | 08b0 |  | ZPB |
| 6 | 10 | John Jelba | 2086 | 6 | 3,5 | 03b0 | $33 \mathrm{w}=$ | 15b1 | 05b0 | 28w1 | 34b1 |  |
| 7 | 13 | Marius Montana | 2081 | 5 | 2,5 | 13w1 |  |  | 33w1 | 29b= | 17b0 | 10w0 |
| 8 | 9 | Isidora Iago | 2076 | 7 | 5,0 | 02w0 | 15b1 | 03b1 | 34w1 | 05w1 | 28b1 | 04w0 |
| 9 | 4 | Desiree Dong | 2071 | 4 | 2,5 |  | 16b1 |  | 22b1 | $32 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 29b0 |  |
| 10 | 5 | Elizabeth Era | 2066 | 7 | 4,0 | 15w1 | 18b1 | 02w1 | 11b0 | 01b0 | 03w0 | 07b1 |
| 11 | 4 | David Dong | 2061 | 6 | 2,5 |  | 14w0 | 80w0 | 10w1 | 25w= | 02w1 | 12w0 |
| 12 | 9 | Ismaele Imbotto | 2056 | 5 | 3,5 |  | 40w1 |  | 55b1 | $44 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 19w0 | 11b1 |
| 13 | 6 | Frank Fala | 2051 | 5 | 3,5 | 07b0 |  | 24w1 | 25b1 | 23w1 | 14b- | $40 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 14 | 1 | Alejandro Almeida | 2046 | 6 | 5,0 | 19b= | 11b1 | 17b1 | 29w0 | $22 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 13w+ | 25w1 |
| 15 | 12 | Lucas Locas | 2041 | 4 | 0,5 | 10b0 | 08w0 | 06w0 |  | PAB |  | $18 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 16 | 1 | Alcide Angolano | 2036 | 3 | 1,5 |  | 09w0 |  | 65b1 |  |  | $32 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 17 | 7 | Genny Gewiss | 2031 | 5 | 2,5 | 55b1 | 19w= | 14w0 | 30b0 |  | 07w1 | ZPB |
| 18 | 6 | Filippa Franceschi | 2026 | 5 | 1,5 |  | 10w0 | 28b0 | 03w0 | 33b1 | 01w- | $15 \mathrm{w}=$ |
| 19 | 8 | Herbert Honacek | 2021 | 6 | 4,0 | $14 w=$ | 17b= |  | 51w= | $30 \mathrm{w}=$ | 12b1 | 43b1 |
| 20 | 3 | Cosimo Chespari | 2016 | 3 | 2,0 |  | 26b0 | 61w1 | 53w1 |  |  |  |
| 21 | 2 | Barbara Bernard | 2011 | 3 | 1,5 |  |  | 35b0 |  | $36 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 68b1 |  |
| 22 | 5 | Elsa Era | 2006 | 7 | 4,5 | 40b1 | 41w1 | 29b1 | 09w0 | $14 \mathrm{w}=$ | $25 \mathrm{~b}=$ | $56 \mathrm{w}=$ |
| 23 | 11 | Kristin Kormans | 2001 | 5 | 0,0 | 68b0 | 30w0 |  | 56w0 | 13b0 | 51b0 |  |
| 24 | 8 | Helmut Holler | 1997 | 6 | 2,5 | 39b0 | 44w= | 13b0 | 69b1 |  | 31w= | 52w= |
| 25 | 3 | Cristian Celamont | 1992 | 6 | 1,0 | 30b0 | 29w0 |  | 13w0 | $11 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 22w= | 14b0 |
| 26 | 2 | Bruno Boita | 1987 | 4 | 3,5 | 79b1 | 20w1 |  |  | 80w1 |  | 57b= |
| 27 | 5 | Erika Espate | 1982 | 1 | 1,0 |  |  |  |  |  |  | 80b1 |
| 28 | 8 | Hans Holz | 1977 | 7 | 3,0 | 01b0 | 05w= | 18w1 | 40b1 | 06b0 | 08w0 | 33w= |
| 29 | 2 | Bruce Belanoy | 1972 | 7 | 5,5 | 31w1 | 25b1 | 22w0 | 14b1 | 07w= | 09w1 | 47w1 |
| 30 | 10 | Jean Joyce | 1967 | 6 | 4,5 | 25w1 | 23b1 | 40w1 | 17w1 | $19 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  | 02w0 |
| 31 | 9 | Ingrid Ilvas | 1962 | 5 | 2,0 | 29b0 |  | 32w0 | 37w1 | 42w= | $24 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  |
| 32 | 3 | Cesira Cohen | 1957 | 6 | 4,5 | 57w1 |  | 31b1 | $38 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 09w= | 35b1 | $16 \mathrm{w}=$ |
| 33 | 11 | Kris Kelpa | 1952 | 7 | 3,5 | 04w1 | 06b= | 34w1 | 07b0 | 18w0 | 40w= | $28 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 34 | 14 | Nikola Neric | 1947 | 4 | 0,5 | 05b= |  | 33b0 | 08b0 | HPB | 06w0 | PAB |
| 35 | 5 | Enza Eliprandi | 1942 | 5 | 3,5 |  |  | 21w1 | 68b= | 39b1 | 32w0 | 76w1 |
| 36 | 13 | Marino Marino | 1937 | 4 | 2,0 | $38 w=$ | $37 \mathrm{w}=$ |  | $43 \mathrm{w}=$ | 21w= |  |  |


| 37 | 14 | Nicola Neba | 1932 | 3 | 1,0 |  | $36 \mathrm{~b}=$ | $52 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 31b0 | HPB |  | PAB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 38 | 6 | Francisco Formenteros | 1927 | 5 | 3,0 | $36 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 59w= | 66w1 | $32 \mathrm{w}=$ | 73w= | 50b- |  |
| 39 | 1 | Abel Adardo | 1922 | 5 | 2,5 | 24w1 | 68b0 | 45w0 | 46w= | 35w0 | 41b+ |  |
| 40 | 12 | Lonnie Lemmie | 1917 | 6 | 1,0 | 22w0 | 12b0 | 30b0 | 28w0 | PAB | $33 \mathrm{~b}=$ | $13 \mathrm{w}=$ |
| 41 | 6 | Federico Frappani | 1912 | 5 | 3,0 | 56w1 | 22b0 | 49b1 |  | 52b0 | 39w- | 51w1 |
| 42 | 7 | George Gotham | 1907 | 4 | 1,0 | 81b0 |  | 50w0 | $74 b=$ | $31 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  | ZPB |
| 43 | 11 | Kelly Kort | 1902 | 5 | 2,0 | 48w0 |  | $55 \mathrm{~b}=$ | $36 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  | 69w1 | 19w0 |
| 44 | 7 | Gipo Gressi | 1897 | 4 | 2,5 | 71w= | $24 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  |  | $12 w=$ | 56b1 | ZPB |
| 45 | 7 | Gunnar Gunnarson | 1892 | 4 | 2,5 |  | 66w= | 39b1 | 47w1 |  | 80w0 | ZPB |
| 46 | 2 | Blanca Bolaverde | 1887 | 4 | 1,5 | 61w0 |  | 59w0 | $39 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 82b1 |  |  |
| 47 | 10 | June Joyce | 1882 | 5 | 1,0 |  |  | 51b0 | 45b0 | 49w0 | 55w1 | 29b0 |
| 48 | 4 | Delly Drago | 1877 | 6 | 4,5 | 43b1 | $50 b=$ | 82w1 | 59b1 |  | $65 b=$ | 61w= |
| 49 | 8 | Hakim Ho | 1872 | 4 | 3,0 | 50w1 |  | 41w0 |  | 47b1 |  | 78b1 |
| 50 | 1 | Asdrubale Arca | 1867 | 3 | 2,5 | 49b0 | $48 \mathrm{w}=$ | 42b1 |  |  | 38w+ |  |
| 51 | 12 | Leone Leone | 1862 | 4 | 2,5 |  |  | 47w1 | $19 \mathrm{~b}=$ | PAB | 23w1 | 41b0 |
| 52 | 11 | Kirk Koman | 1857 | 6 | 4,5 |  | 57b1 | $37 \mathrm{w}=$ | 76w1 | 41w1 | $75 \mathrm{~b}=$ | $24 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 53 | 6 | Flavio Federici | 1852 | 3 | 1,0 |  | $72 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  | 20b0 |  |  | $75 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 54 | 3 | Cammy Calat | 1847 | 2 | 2,0 |  |  |  |  |  | 59w1 | 64b1 |
| 55 | 14 | Noah Negus | 1842 | 5 | 0,5 | 17w0 | 56w0 | 43w= | 12w0 | HPB | 47b0 | PAB |
| 56 | 13 | Maurice Melancon | 1837 | 6 | 2,5 | 41b0 | 55b1 | 04w0 | 23b1 |  | 44w0 | $22 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 57 | 10 | Juan Jupp | 1832 | 4 | 0,5 | 32b0 | 52w0 |  |  |  | 62b0 | 26w= |
| 58 | 3 | Cory Cniser | 1827 | 4 | 2,5 | $74 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 65w0 | 67b1 |  | 68b1 |  |  |
| 59 | 5 | Emanuelle Ener | 1822 | 5 | 2,5 | 69w1 | $38 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 46b1 | 48w0 |  | 54b0 |  |
| 60 | 8 | Hannibal Hermol | 1817 | 2 | 1,5 |  |  |  | 75w1 | $74 w=$ |  |  |
| 61 | 9 | Ivo Ierasimov | 1812 | 4 | 2,5 | 46b1 | 75w1 | 20b0 |  |  |  | $48 \mathrm{~b}=$ |
| 62 | 14 | Nuccio Negri | 1807 | 4 | 3,0 |  | 80w0 | 73w1 | 79w1 | HPB | 57w1 | PAB |
| 63 | 6 | Frederick Fogar | 1802 | 1 | 0,5 | $82 w=$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 64 | 1 | Aaron Asta | 1797 | 2 | 0,0 |  |  |  |  | 72b0 |  | 54w0 |
| 65 | 2 | Brandon Bogart | 1792 | 4 | 2,0 |  | 58b1 |  | 16w0 |  | 48w= | 74w= |
| 66 | 8 | Hyeronimus Hermol | 1787 | 3 | 1,0 |  | 45b= | 38b0 |  |  | 79b= |  |
| 67 | 9 | Ion Iodiac | 1782 | 2 | 0,0 |  |  | 58w0 |  | 77b0 |  |  |
| 68 | 4 | Daria De La Vega | 1777 | 7 | 4,5 | 23w1 | 39w1 | 76b1 | $35 \mathrm{w}=$ | 58w0 | 21w0 | 79b1 |
| 69 | 12 | Lydia Lameran | 1772 | 4 | 0,0 | 59b0 | 79w0 |  | 24w0 | PAB | 43b0 |  |
| 70 | 4 | Diana Drago | 1767 | 1 | 1,0 | 78w1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 71 | 14 | Norberto Nodo | 1762 | 2 | 1,5 | $44 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 82b1 |  |  | HPB |  | PAB |
| 72 | 5 | Erika Ecore | 1757 | 3 | 2,5 | 84b1 | 53w= |  |  | 64w1 |  |  |
| 73 | 11 | Kurt Kontos | 1752 | 3 | 1,5 |  | 74w1 | 62b0 |  | $38 \mathrm{~b}=$ |  |  |
| 74 | 10 | Julio Joyce | 1747 | 7 | 3,5 | 58w= | 73b0 | 75w= | 42w= | $60 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 81w1 | 65b= |
| 75 | 12 | Lavinia Lentrero | 1742 | 5 | 1,5 |  | 61b0 | $74 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 60b0 | PAB | 52w= | $53 \mathrm{w}=$ |
| 76 | 13 | Michael Morte | 1737 | 3 | 0,0 |  |  | 68w0 | 52b0 |  |  | 35b0 |
| 77 | 7 | Gennady Gomirov | 1732 | 2 | 1,0 |  |  |  |  | 67w1 | 82b0 | ZPB |
| 78 | 11 | Ky Korbel | 1727 | 2 | 0,0 | 70b0 |  |  |  |  |  | 49w0 |
| 79 | 9 | Isobel Iodiac | 1722 | 5 | 1,5 | 26w0 | 69b1 |  | 62b0 |  | 66w= | 68w0 |
| 80 | 13 | Manuel Malagracia | 1717 | 5 | 3,0 |  | 62b1 | 11b1 |  | 26b0 | 45b1 | 27w0 |
| 81 | 14 | Nando Nodo | 1712 | 2 | 1,0 | 42w1 |  |  |  | HPB | 74b0 | PAB |
| 82 | 13 | Marko Mokala | 1707 | 5 | 1,5 | $63 \mathrm{~b}=$ | 71w0 | 48b0 |  | 46w0 | 77w1 |  |
| 83 | 10 | Jacques Junipero | 1702 | 0 | 0,0 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 84 | 12 | Lana Leva | 1697 | 1 | 0,0 | 72w0 |  |  |  | PAB |  |  |

Unplayed matches are highlighted for clarity. There are no universal rules for the management of such matches. The treatment rules should therefore be provided for by the specific tournament regulations. Here are the provisions for our tournament:

- PAB: one match point, two game points and zero player points
- HPB: one match point, two game points and zero player points
- ZPB: zero match points, zero game points and zero player points
- -F: zero match points, zero game points and zero player points
- +F: two match points, 4 game points, one point for each player

| Note: The sum of the individual scores of the players may differ from the game |
| :--- |
| points score (GP) of the team, because some types of unplayed matches (PAB, |
| HPB, ...) give game points to the team but do not give points to the players. |

For some tie-breaks, we also need the exact order of players fielding. Such information should be deduced from pairings, a task that is not difficult but rather tedious; this data will be provided only as needed.

## PART ONE -INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS

## 3 Tie-breaks based on Buchholz system and similar

The biggest difficulty encountered in calculating Buchholz scores comes from unplayed games, either of the player or of some opponent of theirs. In the following exercises, those concepts are introduced gradually to aid their assimilation.
This chapter does not include round-robin exercises because, as is known, Buchholz-type tie-breaks are not applicable to this type of tournaments.

## Buchholz in round-robin tournaments

Buchholz is useless in a round-robin tournament, because it cannot break ties (all players with the same score have the same tiebreaker). In fact, in these tournaments each player meets all other players (any games won or lost by forfeit are equivalent to played games). If the tournament includes $N$ players (for simplicity, let's assume N even; the extension to the odd case is in any case immediate), a total of $1 / 2 N \cdot(N-1)$ games take place, each of which distributes one point; so (except in exceptional cases) this is also the total of points distributed among all players (for example, a tournament with 6 players distributes $6 \times 5 / 2=15$ points). The player's Buchholz is the sum of the opponents' scores - therefore, to calculate it, we simply subtract the player's score from the total (e.g., if they scored 3 points, their Buchholz is 15-3 = 12).

### 3.1 Buchholz (total)

## Exercise 1

In the Swiss tournament, calculate the Buchholz score (total) of player \#2.
Let's consider the following excerpt from the crosstable, showing the tournament history of the player (first row, in blue) and of all their opponents, and their scores:

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | $=\mathrm{B} 1$ | +W 16 | $=\mathrm{B} 3$ |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | $=\mathrm{B} 13$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | $=\mathrm{B} 4$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | $=\mathrm{W} 5$ | -B 11 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W 2 | +B 9 | -W 15 | -B 6 | -B 5 |

Since neither the player nor any of the opponents have any unplayed games, the basic Buchholz definition [8.1] applies, and no special adjustments are required; the player's Buchholz is simply given by the sum of the opponents' scores:
$B H(\# 2)=1.0+1.5+3.5+3.5+3.5=13.0$.

## Exercise 2

In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking order between players \#1 and \#3 using the Buchholz system.

From the crosstable, let's extract the tournament histories for the involved players.

| \#1 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 |


| \#3 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W2 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 |

Both played all their games, but the same is not true for all their opponents. We should therefore calculate the opponents' contribution taking into account their unplayed games.

Let's start with \#1 (Alyx) opponents:

| Opponent | $+\mathrm{W} 9\left({ }^{*}\right)$ | $=\mathrm{B} 13$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4\left({ }^{*}\right)$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Opp. score | 1.5 | 1.5 | 4.0 | 2.0 | 3.5 |

Opponents highlighted with an asterisk have one or more unplayed games, and their score may need to be corrected. To do this, let's take a look at their tournament history, which includes several types of unplayed games. The score of a player who has unplayed matches must be adjusted differently (as already happened with previous regulations) depending on whether it is used to calculate the tie-break of the players themselves or their opponents. At the moment we are interested only in the second case - in fact, to calculate the Buchholz of player \#1, we need to adjust the scores of players \#4 and \#9.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | + B12 | =BYE | + W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | - B1 | - W10 | =BYE | - F11 | +BYE |

For this calculation, we must resort to articles 16.2-16.3 of the regulations. The adjustment takes place only for the rounds in which the player requested a bye (those in which the player was possibly withdrawn also count as such) and which were not followed by any round in which the player was available to play [16.1.2]. For the purposes of the opponents' Buchholz, these rounds count as draws [16.3.2]. In all other cases, the
unplayed round is calculated with the assigned score [16.3.1], i.e., the same one displayed on the crosstable and added to obtain the total score, which, for convenience, from now on we will call face value.

For both players \#4 and \#9, all unplayed rounds are followed by at least one round in which the player was available to play, and are therefore calculated at their face value. This basically means that we can calculate the Buchholz of player \#1 simply by adding all the scores of their opponents as they are shown on the scoreboard. We therefore have: $B H(\# 1)=1.5+1.5+4.0+2.0+3.5=12.5$.

Let's now calculate the tie-break of player \#3 (Charline). Again, we have to investigate the opponents who had unplayed games, which are \#4, \#6 and \#11.

| \#3 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | =B4 | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | -BYE | +W13 | =W | =B1 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W 16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W 7 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W 6 |

Once again, all unplayed rounds are followed by at least one round with availability to play, so all results are taken at face value. We can therefore calculate the Buchholz, which is $\mathrm{BH}(\# 3)=2.5+3.0+2.5+3.5+4.0=15.5$.
Hence, player \#3 (Charline) precedes \#1 (Alyx) in the rankings.

## Exercise 3

In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking order between players \#5, \#8 and \#11 using the Buchholz system.
We now have a new case: one of the players (\#11) has an unplayed game, of which we should determine the contribution, not only for opponents as in the previous exercise, but also for the player himself [16.4]. Let's look at the players' data.

| \#5 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | =B7 | +W 10 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | -B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | -W 5 | -B 11 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | -W 1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W 2 | +B 9 | -W 15 | -B 6 | -B 5 |

Player \#5 has no unplayed games. Among his opponents, player \#11 has a forfeit win (due opponent's forfeit) in the fourth round, which is an unplayed game of the type [16.2.2] and is therefore counted at face value [16.3.1]. Their Buchholz is therefore $B H(\# 5)=2.5+2 \cdot 0.1 .5+1.5+1.0=8.5$.

| \#8 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 |

Also Player \#8 has no unplayed games, and among the opponents we count a bye assigned by the pairing (PAB) [16.2.1], a forfeit defeat [16.2.4], and a round of scheduled absence (i.e., a zero points bye on request) followed by a played round [16.2.3]. All these results are calculated at face value, so Buchholz is $B H(\# 8)=3.5+3.5+3.0+2.0+1.5=13.5$.

| \#11 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | -B4 | -W2 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | =B7 | +W 10 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | =W | -B 11 |

Finally, player \#11's opponents only have regular played games, but this time it is the player themself who did not play a round, namely because of a forfeit win [16.2.2]. For this round, the contribution that the player gives to themself is calculated as a game played against a dummy opponent (not to be confused with the virtual opponent!) who has the same number of points as the player, and ends with the result corresponding to the points awarded [16.4].

Note: the score of the dummy opponent is not the one held by the player at the time of the unplayed round, but rather the one with which the player finished the tournament. For Buchholz, knowing how the match ended is not relevant, because Buchholz simply adds up the scores of all the player's opponents - but it would be very relevant in the case of the Sonneborn-Berger system!

Now, the dummy opponent has 2.5 points, the very same as player \#11. So the player's Buchholz is $\mathrm{BH}(\# 11)=3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5+1.5=13.5$.

Finally, let's compare the results: player \#5, with Buchholz equal to 8.5, is ranked third, while players \#8 and \#11, both with Buchholz 13.5, are still tied for the first place. To break this tie, we will have to move on to the next tie-break of the list, if any, or to a drawing of lots [4.2].

After these first exercises, we can observe that, in practice, despite the presence of unplayed rounds, the Buchholz of the players involved was calculated simply using the scores of the opponents just as they were displayed in the rankings. This is certainly not a coincidence: the philosophy of the new regulations is that, in general, the score used for the tie-breaks should be the same one that determines the ranking. An exception is made
for opponents who finished their tournament prematurely - because they could otherwise damage their opponents' tie-break with an unduly low score (think for example of a player who, after winning several games, was suddenly forced to withdraw for some reason or other). Therefore, to limit the damage to opponents, all unplayed games from the withdrawal onwards are calculated as draws; we will see that in the next exercise.

## Exercise 4

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz system, determine the ranking order for players at 3.5 points.

Among the opponents of the affected players, we now find player \#12 who, having received a PAB in the second round and, immediately after that, a forfeit win in the third round, withdrew from the tournament from the fourth round. Let us proceed step by step.

| \#1 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | =B1 | +W 16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | =BYE | +W 13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B 1 | -W 10 | =BYE | -F 11 | +BYE |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W 1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |

Let's start with player \#1, who played all his games; among their opponents, we find \#4, who got a half-point bye, and \#9, who has three unplayed games. The first of these unplayed games, a half-point requested bye, is followed by a forfeit loss (both those are rounds without availability to play) [16.2.4], but in the end the player re-entered the tournament, although receiving a PAB [16.2 .1], and was therefore available to play. Hence, the bye on request constitutes an unplayed round of type [16.2.3].

The same goes for player \#4, whose bye on request is also followed by played rounds. Ultimately, all unplayed games are calculated at their face value [16.3.1]. The player's Buchholz is therefore $\mathrm{BH}(\# 1)=4.0+3.5+2.0+1.5+1.5=12.5$.

| \#3 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 |

Let's now look at the situation for player \#3. Among their opponents, we count a halfpoint bye on request [16.2.3], a PAB [16.2.1] and a forfeit win [16.2.2]; once again, all these unplayed games are counted at nominal value, so the Buchholz is
$\mathrm{BH}(\# 3)=4 \cdot 0+3 \cdot 5+3.0+2 \cdot 5+2 \cdot 5=15.5$.

| $\# 16$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | -B1 | +W 16 | -B3 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | -B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | -W5 | -B 11 |

Now let's move on to \#16. The situation is similar: among the opponents there is only one forfeit win [16.2.2], and Buchholz is $\mathrm{BH}(\# 16)=4.0+2.5+2.5+2.0+1.5=12.5$.

| \#4 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W 4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W 14 |

Last, player \#4 got a half-point bye, and faced a player who later withdrew. Let's see the contributions due to these rounds.

The half-point bye on request provides the player with a contribution equal to their score, i.e., 3.5 points, as per the crosstable.

The contribution of the withdrawn opponent is calculated as follows: the PAB and the forfeit win contribute their nominal value [16.3.1], therefore one point each. The last two rounds, however, which are voluntarily unplayed rounds, and are not followed by any rounds with availability to play, fall into category [16.2.5] and therefore carry a contribution for the opponent of half a point each [16.3.2]. Hence, player \#12's adjusted contribution is worth a total of $0.0+1.0+1.0+0.5+0.5=3.0$ points.

The Buchholz of \#4 is therefore $\mathrm{BH}(\# 4)=3.0+3.5+1.5+3.5+3.5=15.0$.
The ranking therefore is \#3(15.5), \#4(15.0) and, still tied, \#1 and \#16 (12.5). For the last two players we will have to continue with the next tie-breaks or drawing of lots.

### 3.2 Buchholz Cut-1

Modifiers [14] are rules that alter the behaviour of a tie-break system in a predefined manner; the best known, and most used, is the Cut-1 modifier [14.1], which ignores the least significant contribution in the tie-break calculation.

In the case of the Buchholz system, this usually means ignoring the contribution of the opponent with the smallest score; However, if the player has some voluntarily unplayed games (forfeit or bye on request), the smallest of the contributions due to these unplayed games will be ignored [16], with the idea that they are less significant than those results that were decided on-the-board.

## Exercise 5

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 2.5 points.

Here we encounter for the first time the application of the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] to the Buchholz system. It requires ignoring, among all the opponents' contributions, the least significant one, which corresponds to the opponent with the lowest score [14.1.1], except when the player has voluntarily unplayed games (this case will be explained later). We proceed as usual to calculate all the opponents' contributions for each player; now, however, before performing the actual sum, we must identify and discard the least significant contribution.

| \#5 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | $=\mathrm{B} 7$ | +W 10 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | -B 3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | -W5 | -B 11 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | -W 1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W 2 | +B 9 | -W 15 | -B 6 | -B 5 |

Player \#5 played all their rounds. Among their opponents, \#11 has a forfeit win [16.2.2], which is calculated at face value [16.3.1]. The contributions are therefore 2.5, 2.0, 1.5, 1.5, 1.0; the least significant is that of opponent \#10, who has fewer points (1.0); the player's Buchholz Cut-1 is therefore $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 5)=2.5+2.0+1.5+1.5=7.5$.

| \#8 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | $=\mathrm{B} 16$ | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | =B4 | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B 14 | -W 3 | +BYE | +W 10 | +B 8 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W 6 | -B 8 | -F 12 | -- | +B 13 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | =W 1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |

Same holds for player \#8, so the received contributions are 3.5, 3.5, 3.0, 2.0, 1.5; among these, the least significant is 1.5 , therefore $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 8)=3.5+3.5+3.0+2.0=12.0$.

| \#11 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | $=\mathrm{B} 3$ | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | $=\mathrm{B} 4$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | -B7 | +W 10 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | =W5 | -B 11 |

Player \#11, on the other hand, has an unplayed game. This is however a forfeit win [16.2.2], and therefore an available-to-play round; the contribution of this round is equal to the player's final score, i.e., 2.5 points. The contributions are therefore 3.5, 3.5, 2.5, $2.5,1.5$. Among these, since there are no voluntarily unplayed rounds (forfeit defeats or byes on request) the smallest one is ignored, namely that of \#7 (1.5). Therefore,
$\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 11)=3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5=12.0$.
The ranking order is therefore \#8 and \#11 still tied (12.0), \#5 (7.5).

## Exercise 6

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 1.5 points.

In this exercise, for the first time we apply the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] for a player who has some unplayed games in his tournament history. For this player we are to apply [16.5] and choose the contribution to ignore among those relating to unplayed games.

As usual, let's look at the players one by one.

| \#7 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | $=\mathrm{W} 5$ | -B 11 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | -B1 | +W 16 | =B3 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | -W8 | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | -B7 | +W 10 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | -B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |

Player \#7 played all his games; subtracting the 2.0 contribution of \#15, which is the least significant, we obtain for the Buchholz the value $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C1}(\# 7)=4.0+3.5+2.5+2.5=12.5$.

| \#9 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B 1 | -W 10 | $=\mathrm{BYE}$ | -F 11 | +BYE |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | -B13 | -W2 | +B 15 | -W 4 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W 2 | +B 9 | -W 15 | -B 6 | -B 5 |

Here too we have nothing new regarding the contributions of the opponents, but player \#9 also has three unplayed games that we should examine. We must choose the contribution to be ignored among the games lost by forfeit and byes on request [16.5] in our case, between the third and fourth rounds (the fifth round is in fact a PAB, and therefore with availability to play, and as such is not among those rounds to be cut first).

For each unplayed game, the contribution is equal to a dummy opponent with the player's score, i.e., 1.5 points. We must discard the lesser contribution due to a voluntarily unplayed round (rounds 3 and 4); being equal, we discard any of the two. The tie-break value is therefore $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 9)=3.5+1.0+1.5+1.5=7.5$.

| $\# 13$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | -W 1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | -B13 | =W2 | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | =BYE | +W 13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | =B7 | +W 10 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W 6 | -B 8 | -F 12 | -- | +B 13 |

Finally, for \#13 again there is nothing special; the least significant contribution is the 2.0 given by opponent $\# 14$, so $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C1}(\# 13)=3.5+3.5+2.5+2.5=12.0$.

The ranking order is therefore \#7 (12.5), \#13 (12.0), \#9 (7.5).

## Exercise 7

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 3.5 points.
As usual, let's examine affected players one by one.

| \#1 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | = B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | = B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 |

Player \#1 played all their games, and their opponents' unplayed games must all be calculated at face value [16.3.1]; discarding the least significant contribution (1.5), the tiebreak is $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 1)=4.0+3.5+2.0+1.5=11.0$.

| \#3 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | -BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B 14 | -W 3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B 3 | +W13 | -W 6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F9 | +W7 |

Same holds for player \#3. Discarding the less significant contribution (2.5), we get $B H-C 1(\# 3)=4.0+3.5+3.0+2.5=13.0$.

| \#4 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W 4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W 14 |

Opponent \#12 has two unplayed games in the second and third round, respectively of type [16.2.1] and [16.2.2], that are taken at face value [16.3.1]. In the last two rounds, that player withdrew (voluntarily unplayed rounds). For the opponents' Buchholz calculation purposes, each of these rounds is worth as much as a draw [16.3.2], so the total contribution of $\# 12$ to the opponents' Buchholz is $0.0+1.0+1.0+0.5+0.5=3.0$.

Player \#4 requested a half-point bye, which is however followed by rounds with availability to play and must therefore be calculated as a game (a drawn one, because it is an HPB) against a dummy opponent at 3.5 points, i.e., as many as the player themself [16.4]. However, this is a bye on request, and must therefore be the first contribution to be discarded by the Cut modifiers [16.5].

The Buchholz value is therefore $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C1}(\# 4)=3.5+3.5+3.0+1.5=11.5$.
Note: discarding an unplayed round seems to be a disadvantage for the player (by cutting the minimum contribution, here we would get a $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1=12.5$ ); in fact, this rule avoids an unfair advantage as, without it, a player could skip a round they know they will lose for the sole purpose of improving their Buchholz.

| $\# 16$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | =B1 | +W 16 | -B3 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | -W5 | -B 11 |

The last player played all their games. Among the opponents' unplayed rounds there is only one forfeit win, which is calculated at face value. Discarding the least significant contribution (1.5) we obtain BH C1 $(\# 16)=4.0+2.5+2.5+2.0=11.0$.

Summarising, the ranking order is \#3 (13.0); \#4 (11.5); \#1, \#16 still tied (11.0).

## Exercise 8

In the Swiss tournament, using the Buchholz Cut-1 system, determine the ranking order for players at 2.0 points.

In this exercise we find a situation typical of the low ranking, with several types of unplayed games of different kind. As usual, let's examine the players one by one.

| $\# 12$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W 4 | +BYE | +F 14 | -- | -- |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | =BYE | +W 13 | $=\mathrm{W} 3$ | $=\mathrm{B} 1$ |

The contribution from opponent \#4's is calculated at face value, as the requested bye in the second round is followed by rounds with availability to play [16.2.3]. Player \#12, however, has four unplayed rounds, each of which is calculated as a match with a dummy opponent at 2.0 points, equal to the player's own score [16.4]. One of the contributions from rounds 4 and 5 will be cut (it makes no difference which one, since they are equal), so $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1(\# 12)=3.5+2.0+2.0+2.0=9.5$.

| $\# 14$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W 6 | -B 8 | -F 12 | -- | +B 13 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B 14 | -W 3 | +BYE | +W 10 | +B 8 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | -W1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |

Once again, the player has unplayed rounds, both valued at 2.0 points, and one of these will be discarded by Cut-1; therefore $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C1}(\# 14)=3.0+2.5+2.0+1.5=9.0$.

| $\# 15$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | =B13 | -W2 | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | -W8 | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W 13 | -B 15 | +W 11 | -B7 | +W 10 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | -W5 | -B 11 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W 2 | +B 9 | -W 15 | -B 6 | -B 5 |

The last player has no unplayed game; excluding the least significant contribution (1.0), we obtain $\mathrm{BH}-\mathrm{C} 1=3.5+3.5+2.5+1.5=11.0$.

The ranking order is therefore \#15 (11.0), \#12(9.5), \#14(9.0).

### 3.3 Average Buchholz of opponents

The calculation of this tie-break is somewhat more laborious than the previous ones, as it requires the calculation of the Buchholz of all the opponents of the tied players. We can calculate it in two phases: first, we calculate all the necessary Buchholz values and put them in a table; then we calculate averages. For this tie-break, no modifiers are allowed (see rule [5]).

## Exercise 9

In the Swiss tournament, using the Average Buchholz of Opponents (AOB) system, determine the tiebreaker and ranking order for all players.

In this exercise we need to calculate the Buchholz of all players (the reader may want to consider this a useful refresher). First, we should calculate the score adjusted for unplayed rounds. In practice, the score to be used in Buchholz for calculating one's own tie-break is always equal to the score obtained [16.4], so we need only calculate the adjusted scores to be used for opponents' tie-breaks (column AS-O). The techniques are the same used in previous exercises, so we will not go into detail. At this stage, it is most convenient to use the crosstable sorted by pairing numbers.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | AS-O |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | $=\mathrm{B} 13$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ | 3.5 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | $=\mathrm{B} 1$ | +W 16 | $=\mathrm{B} 3$ | 4.0 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W 8 | =B4 | =W2 | 3.5 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | =BYE | +W 13 | $=\mathrm{W} 3$ | $=\mathrm{B} 1$ | 3.5 |


| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | =B7 | +W10 | 2.5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 3.0 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1.5 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 2.5 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 1.5 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1.0 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 2.5 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 3.0 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 1.5 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 2.0 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 2.0 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 3.5 |

To avoid trivial errors, let's remember that when calculating the tie-break of a player who has unplayed rounds, we must choose the right contribution between the face value (for themself) and the adjusted one (for opponents, i.e., everyone else). Once all contributions have been determined, we can proceed to their sum, player by player, as in the following table (which has been sorted by score and Buchholz for future convenience).

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | BH |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 13.0 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 4.0 | 15.5 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 15.0 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 4.0 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 12.5 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 4.0 | 2.0 | 12.5 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 1.0 | 2.5 | 12.0 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 3.0 | 13.5 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 13.5 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 1.0 | 8.5 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 1.0 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 12.0 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 11.5 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 1.5 | 11.0 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 4.0 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 14.5 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 14.0 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 9.0 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | 4.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 2.5 | 13.0 |

Now we calculate the average of the opponents' Buchholz values, keeping in mind that we should add only those opponents who were actually met on-the-board [8.2]. To avoid false ties caused by number rounding, we calculate the averages to two decimal places. Finally, we sort the list to get the ranking.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | BH | AOB |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | 13.0 | 14.5 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 15.5 | 13.0 | 13.60 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | 13.5 | 12.0 | 13.5 | 15.0 | 13.0 | 15.5 | 13.40 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | 11.5 | -- | 14.0 | 15.5 | 12.5 | 15.0 | 13.38 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | 13.5 | 13.5 | 14.5 | 13.0 | 12.0 | 12.5 | 13.30 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | 9.0 | 14.0 | 13.0 | 12.0 | 15.0 | 12.5 | 12.60 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | 11.0 | 15.5 | -- | 13.0 | 13.5 | 12.0 | 13.25 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | 14.0 | 12.0 | 13.5 | 14.5 | 13.0 | 8.5 | 13.40 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | 12.5 | 11.0 | 15.5 | 14.0 | 12.0 | 13.5 | 13.00 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | 15.5 | 12.5 | 8.5 | -- | 14.5 | 13.5 | 12.75 |
| 12 | Nick $($ W $)$ | 1650 | 2.0 | 15.0 | -- | -- | -- | -- | 11.5 | 15.00 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | 12.0 | 13.5 | -- | -- | 14.0 | 11.0 | 13.17 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | 14.5 | 8.5 | 13.0 | 12.5 | 12.5 | 12.0 | 12.20 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | 12.5 | 13.0 | -- | -- | -- | 9.0 | 12.75 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | 8.5 | 12.5 | 15.0 | 13.5 | 11.0 | 14.0 | 12.10 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | 12.0 | 13.0 | 12.5 | 8.5 | 13.5 | 14.5 | 11.90 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | 13.0 | 9.0 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 8.5 | 13.0 | 10.90 |

### 3.4 Fore Buchholz

The essential feature of this tie-break is that it (as well as, for example, ARO) can be calculated as soon as the pairing of the last round is known, even before it is actually played. Modifiers can be applied to this tiebreaker, but here we will limit ourselves to an example of a total Fore Buchholz.

## Exercise 10

In the Swiss tournament, using the Fore Buchholz (FB) system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The key feature of the system is all the last round games are considered as drawn (they may not have been played yet). Of course, planned unplayed games, being known before the round, will be considered as in reality - there is no need to make assumptions about their conclusion!

Now, by definition, the "final" score used for the tie-break calculation is not the real one. We therefore highlighted (in red) the scores that differ from the real results - and (of course) there are several of them. The score adjusted for opponents can also be different, also because the definition itself of this tie-break "conceals" any forfeits in the last round.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | AS-O |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 | 4.0 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | = B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W4 | 3.5 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 | 3.5 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 | 3.5 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.0 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | =W15 | 3.0 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 2.5 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | =B8 | 2.5 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.0 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | =B7 | =W10 | 2.0 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 3.0 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | =W6 | 3.0 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.0 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | = W7 | 2.0 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 3.0 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 1.5 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | = B13 | 1.5 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.5 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | =B16 | 2.5 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 2.0 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | =B11 | 2.0 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 1.5 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 2.0 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | =W14 | 2.0 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.5 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | =B5 | 1.5 |

Having determined the contributions of each player for their opponents, we now proceed to calculate the tie-break values, using the same method as in the previous exercise. Rearranging then our crosstable based on the tie-break values, we obtain:

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | FB |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 | 13.5 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 | 4.0 | 15.0 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 14.0 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 4.0 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 13.5 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 4.0 | 2.5 | 13.5 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 12.5 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 3.0 | 12.0 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 12.0 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 1.5 | 10.0 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 12.5 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 11.5 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 10.5 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 4.0 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 13.5 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 9.5 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 1.5 | 13.5 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.5 | 4.0 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 2.0 | 12.5 |

Let's close this chapter with an interesting comparison of the rankings produced by the various systems; the following table shows the ranking of each player, identified by their pairing number. Unresolved ties are highlighted. These instances require further tiebreakers, or the drawing of lots, to determine final standings.

|  | Final Rankings |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| BH | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 | 16 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 15 | 12 | 14 | 7 | 13 | 9 | 10 |
| BH-C1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 | 16 | 6 | 8 | 11 | 5 | 15 | 12 | 14 | 7 | 13 | 9 | 10 |
| AOB | 2 | 4 | 3 | 16 | 1 | 6 | 5 | 8 | 11 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 9 | 13 | 7 | 10 |
| FB | 2 | 3 | 4 | 1 | 16 | 8 | 6 | 15 | 5 | 11 | 12 | 14 | 7 | 9 | 13 | 10 |

We can see that the generated rankings vary, potentially influencing the allocation of titles and prizes. Moreover, none of these systems has successfully resolved all ties.

The diagram below illustrates the variations in the final ranking position for each player (horizontal axis), determined by the tie-break system used.


## 4 Tie-breaks with Sonneborn-Berger and Koya systems

Contrary to Buchholz, the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system can be used both for Swiss tournaments and for round-robins, although it is not the most suitable option for the former. For Sonneborn-Berger, the same modifiers applicable to the Buchholz can be used (especially the Cut-1, while it makes no sense to use the Median), but the use of variants of the SB with modifiers is rare.

On the other hand, the Koya system is specifically defined for round-robin tournaments. If an organizer intends to use it in a Swiss tournament, it must be explicitly defined in the event regulations [4.1]). The Koya system allows for the use of the Limit modifier.

### 4.1 Sonneborn-Berger for Swiss tournaments

In the Sonneborn-Berger system [9.1], the results of opponents are combined with those of the player in such a way that the opponent's score has less weight in the case of a draw and is effectively ignored in the case of a loss. Unlike Buchholz, a defeat against a strong player does not contribute in any way in this system. On one hand, this system acknowledges that there is no special merit in losing to a Grandmaster; on the other hand, a player of average skill who happens to face several extremely strong players would be
penalized without any real fault of their own. As is often the case with tie-breaks, the interpretation of the meaning of the system used, and therefore its fairness, is more of a philosophical than a technical matter. However, in principle, the choice of tie-breaks is up to the event organizer, and the player can decide whether to participate after reviewing the rules.

We will now see some examples similar to those used for Buchholz, so we will be able to compare the results and get an idea of the different behaviour between the two systems.

## Exercise 11

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system, determine the tiebreak values and ranking order for the players at 3.5 points.

Affected players are \#1, \#3, \#4, \#16. The management rules for unplayed rounds are the same as in the case of Buchholz; in SB, however, for correct application, it is essential to clearly understand the difference between the opponent's value, which is their score, and their contribution to the tie-break [9.1].

The opponent's contribution is each addend that must be added to obtain the value of the tie-break. It is given by the product between the opponent's score and the result obtained against them (the contributions of the opponents with which the player lost are therefore all null). This should not be confused with the value itself.

Here, the only score that must be adjusted for the calculation of the opponents' tie-break is that of player \#12, who withdrew from the fourth round on (see Exercise 4).
As usual, let's examine the players and their opponents one by one.

| $\# 1$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W 9 | $=\mathrm{B} 13$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ | +B 15 | $=\mathrm{W} 4$ |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | =B1 | +W 16 | -B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | -BYE | +W 13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B 1 | -W 10 | =BYE | -F 11 | +BYE |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B 5 | =W1 | -B 4 | -B 8 | -W 14 |

Player \#1 played all of their games; furthermore, their opponents' unplayed rounds are all to be counted at face value [16.3.1]. To avoid errors, in the calculations we'd better follow the sequence of opponents as shown on the crosstable; this player's tiebreak is therefore $\mathrm{SB}(\# 1)=1 * 1.5+1 / 2 * 1.5+1 / 2 * 4.0+1 * 2.0+1 / 2 * 3.5=8.00$.

| \#3 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | $=\mathrm{B} 4$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | =B1 | +W 16 | =B3 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | -BYE | +W 13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B 14 | -W 3 | +BYE | +W 10 | +B 8 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |

Let's now consider player \#3. Their opponents' unplayed rounds are all accounted for at face value, and therefore $\mathrm{SB}(\# 3)=1 / 2 * 2.5+1 * 3.0+1 * 2.5+1 / 2 * 3.5+1 / 2 * 4.0=10.50$.

| $\# 16$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | $=\mathrm{W} 8$ | +B 11 | +W 7 | -B 2 | +W 15 |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | =B1 | +W 16 | -B3 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W 14 | -B 3 | +W 13 | -W 6 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | -B3 | -W 16 | -B 5 | +F 9 | +W 7 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B 7 | +W 5 | +B 10 | -W 1 | -B 16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W 15 | -B 2 | -B 16 | =W5 | -B 11 |

Going on to player \#16, again nothing changes, and we find
$\mathrm{SB}(\# 16)=1 / 2 * 2.5+1 * 2.5+1 * 1.5+0 * 4.0+1 * 2.0=7.25$.

| \#4 | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B 12 | =BYE | +W 13 | =W3 | =B1 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W 4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W 14 |

Finally, player \#4 got a half-point bye, and met the withdrawn player. The half-point bye on request provides them with a value equal to their score, i.e., 3.5 points, as per the crosstable. Let's be careful, however: to obtain the contribute of the (dummy) opponent, this value must be multiplied by the equivalent result of the round, which is a draw [16.4].

The contribution of the withdrawn opponent is calculated, as we saw above, by evaluating the unplayed rounds since the withdrawal as draws. It is therefore worth 3.0 points. So
$\mathrm{SB}(\# 4)=1 * 3.0+1 / 2 * 3.5+1 * 1.5+1 / 2 * 3.5+1 / 2 * 3.5=9.75$.
The ranking therefore is \#3 (10.50), \#4 (9.75), \#1 (8.00) and \#16 (7.25).

## Exercise 12

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system, determine the tiebreak values and ranking order for all players.

For each player, we calculate the score adjusted for opponents' tie-break, and put it in the "AS" column we added to the crosstable. Then we can calculate the contribution given by each opponent's score - for clarity, we explicitly show the product between the player's result and the opponent's score. The last column of the table contains the sum of all the contributions, i.e., the tie-break value; all that remains to do, is to sort players to yield the final ranking.

Methodological note: For this exercise and the following ones, the reader is strongly encouraged to start from the table presented in paragraph 2.1, perform the calculation independently, and only then compare it with the one reported here to verify its accuracy.

| \# | NAME | SCORE | AS | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | SB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 4.0 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 | 9.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.0 | 1*1.5 | $1 / 2 * 3.5$ | 1*3.5 | 1/2*3.5 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 3.5 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = 84 | =W2 | 10.50 |
| 3 |  |  |  | 1/2*2.5 | 1*3.0 | 1*2.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 1/2*4.0 |  |
| 4 | David | 3.5 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = 11 | 9.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*3.0 | 1/2*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 1/2*3.5 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 3.5 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 | 8.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | 1/2*1.5 | $1 / 2 * 4.0$ | 1*2.0 | 1/2*3.5 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 3.5 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 7.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*2.5 | 1*2.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*4.0 | 1*2.0 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 3.0 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 6.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*2.0 | 0*3.5 | 1*3.0 | 1*1.0 | 1*2.5 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 2.5 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 5.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*3.5 | 0*3.5 | 0*2.5 | 1*2.5 | $1^{*} 1.5$ |  |
| 8 | Irina | 2.5 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 5.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 11/2*3.5 | 1*2.0 | 0*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*3.0 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2.5 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {7 }}$ | +W10 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*1.5 | 0*2.0 | 1*2.5 | $1 / 2 * 1.5$ | 1*1.0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 2.0 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 4.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*3.0 | 0*2.5 | 0*2.0 | 0*2.0 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 2.0 | 3.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 4.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 1*2.0 | 1*2.0 | 0*2.0 | 0*2.0 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 2.0 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 3.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*1.5 | 1*2.5 | 1*1.0 | 0*3.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1.5 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*2.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 0*3.5 | 0*2.5 | 0*2.0 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1.5 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 3.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*2.0 | 0*4.0 | 0*3.5 | 1/2*2.5 | 0*2.5 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1.5 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 2.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*1.0 | 1/2*1.5 | 0*1.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1.0 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*4.0 | $1^{*} 1.5$ | 0*2.0 | 0*3.0 | 0*2.5 |  |

## Exercise 13

In the Swiss tournament, using the Sonneborn-Berger Cut-1 (SB-C1) system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The application of the Cut-1 modifier [14.1] to the Sonneborn-Berger system is, in practice, a novelty, but it but it may possibly become more widespread over time.

The modifier requires disregarding, among all opponent contributions, the least significant one and, once again, this corresponds to the opponent with the lowest score [14.1.1].

Now, however, since the opponent's contribution, i.e., the value to be actually added, also depends on the player's result, the least significant value may not be the one that gives rise to the smallest contribution. For instance, a draw against a three-point opponent is worth 1.5 , which is smaller than the contribution of a win against a two-point opponent (2.0); however, the least significant value is the latter, and this is the one to cut.

If two or more opponents share the minimum score, the opponent that gives the smallest contribution to the player will be cut. For example, if both "less significant" opponents have two points, and the player has won against one while losing or drawing against the other, the latter will be cut.
When the player has one or more unplayed rounds due to their unavailability (forfeit losses; requested byes; scheduled absences) [16.1.2], the Cut-1 instead cuts one of these (two in the case of Cut-2, and so on) - but only if the corresponding contribution is not less than the least significant value [16.5]; in this latter case, the exception does not apply, and the opponent with the least significant value is cut.

Note: among voluntarily unplayed rounds (VUR), only half-point byes (HPB) bring a non-zero contribution, while forfeits and zero-point byes always give a null contribution. The round to be cut is determined by finding (1) the smallest contribution due to a VUR and (2) the contribution due to the least significant opponent (whether real or dummy), which is always the one with the lowest score. The largest between these two is the one to be discarded.

As in the previous exercise, let's calculate all the opponents' values for each player; this time however, before performing the sum, we need to cut a value from the calculation (in the ensuing table, the cut values relating to played games are highlighted in blue, while those relating to unplayed rounds are in red).

| \# | NAME | SCORE | AS | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | SB-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 4.0 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | = ${ }^{1} 1$ | +W16 | =B3 | 8.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.0 | 1*1.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 1*3.5 | $11 / 2 * 3.5$ |  |
| 3 | Charline | 3.5 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W2 | 9.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*2.5 | 1*3.0 | 1*2.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 1/2*4.0 |  |
| 4 | David | 3.5 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 | 8.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*3.0 | 1/2*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 112*3.5 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 3.5 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 7.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | 1/2*1.5 | 1/2*4.0 | 1*2.0 | 1/2*3.5 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 3.5 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 5.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*2.5 | 1*2.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*4.0 | 1*2.0 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 3.0 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 5.50 |
| 6 |  |  |  | 0*2.0 | 0*3.5 | 1*3.0 | 1*1.0 | 1*2.5 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 2.5 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*3.5 | 0*3.5 | 0*2.5 | 1*2.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 2.5 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 3.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*3.5 | 1*2.0 | 0*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*3.0 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2.5 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {7 }}$ | +W10 | 3.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*1.5 | 0*2.0 | 1*2.5 | 1/2*1.5 | 1*1.0 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 2.0 | 3.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 4.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 1*2.0 | 1*2.0 | 0*2.0 | 0*2.0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 2.0 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 3.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*3.0 | 0*2.5 | 0*2.0 | 0*2.0 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 2.0 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 2.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*1.5 | 1*2.5 | 1*1.0 | 0*3.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1.5 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*2.5 | $1 / 2 * 3.5$ | 0*3.5 | 0*2.5 | 0*2.0 |  |


| 7 | Genevieve | 1.5 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1.25 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | 1*2.0 | 0*4.0 | 0*3.5 | 1/2*2.5 | 0*2.5 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1.5 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 2.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*1.0 | 1/2*1.5 | 0*1.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1.0 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 0.00 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*4.0 | 1*1.5 | 0*2.0 | 0*3.0 | 0*2.5 |  |

To clarify better, let's see the choice of the value to discard for some players:
\#2 the least significant contribution, and therefore the one to be discarded, is due to opponent \#10, who obtained the lowest score
\#4 we have a contribution of 1.75 points due to an HPB, while the least significant among those due to the opponents (precisely, at \#13) is worth 1.50 points. The larger of the two is discarded, which is the one relating to the HPB
\#6 the least significant contribution, the one to be discarded, is due to opponent \#10, with whom the player won; the minimum contribution instead would be the one due to \#14, but this opponent is not the least significant and should not be discarded
\#14 here there is a contribution due to the forfeit or scheduled absence (it makes no difference, they are both null); the least significant value is that due to opponent \#13 and the relative contribution is worth 1.50 points. We discard the larger value, which in this case is the one due to the actually played game
\#12 there is a zero contribution due to a scheduled absence (fourth or fifth round, it makes no difference which of the two - please note that the PAB and the forfeit win are not rounds without availability to play). The least significant are still those due to these unplayed rounds because the dummy opponent has the lowest score. The round to be discarded is therefore one of these two, and its contribution is zero
\#9 between the two rounds without availability to play (VUR), the minimum contribution is zero due to the forfeit defeat (the HPB instead gives a contribution of 0.75 points); the one relating to the least significant value is due to opponent \#10, and is also worth zero, so the first one is discarded

### 4.2 Sonneborn-Berger in round-robin tournaments

In round-robins, which are tournaments with predetermined pairings, unplayed games can only be won or lost by forfeit. They are treated on a par with regularly played games [15.6], so it is never necessary to adjust the scores obtained. Apart from this, there is no substantial difference as compared to what we did in the case of the Swiss tournament.

## Exercise 14

In the Round-robin tournament determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players using the Sonneborn-Berger (SB) system.

As we did before, we insert the contributions of the individual matches into the crosstable; note that the 5-6 game, awarded by forfeit, is treated just like all other games.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | SB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | =W5 | +W2 | +B3 | -W4 | +B6 | 9.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*1.5 | 1*3.5 | 1*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 3.5 | +W6 | -B1 | +W5 | =W3 | +B4 | 6.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 112*3.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | +W4 | +B6 | -W1 | =B2 | +W5 | 6.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | $1^{*} 1.5$ | 0*3.5 | 1/2*3.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1.5 | -B3 | -B5 | =W6 | +B1 | -W2 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 1/2*1.5 | 1*3.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 5 | Franck | 1950 | 1.5 | = 11 | +W4 | -B2 | -W6 | -B3 | 3.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 6 | Helene | 2000 | 1.5 | -B2 | -W3 | = B4 | +B5 | -W1 | 2.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*3.5 | $1 / 2 * 1.5$ | $1^{*} 1.5$ | 0*3.5 |  |

## Exercise 15

In the Round-robin tournament determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players using the Sonneborn-Berger Cut-1 (SB-C1) system.

As mentioned, here we do not need to apply adjustments to unplayed games. Since we use the Cut-1 modifier, for each player we will cut the contribution of the least significant opponent (the one with the lowest score) - and, when scores are equal, we cut the lower of those contributions [14.1.1] (the cut round is highlighted in blue on the crosstable).

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | SB-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | =W5 | +W2 | +B3 | -W4 | +B6 | 9.25 |
| 1 |  |  |  | 1/2*1.5 | 1*3.5 | 1*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 1*1.5 |  |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 3.5 | +W6 | -B1 | +W5 | =W3 | +B4 | 4.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 | 1*1.5 | $1 / 2 * 3.5$ | 1*1.5 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | +W4 | +B6 | -W1 | =B2 | +W5 | 4.75 |
|  |  |  |  | 1*1.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 | $1 / 2 * 3.5$ | 1*1.5 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1.5 | -B3 | -B5 | =W6 | +B1 | -W2 | 4.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 1/2*1.5 | 1*3.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 5 | Franck | 1950 | 1.5 | =B1 | +W4 | -B2 | -W6 | -B3 | 3.25 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2*3.5 | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 | 0*1.5 | 0*3.5 |  |
| 6 | Helene | 2000 | 1.5 | -B2 | -W3 | = 84 | +B5 | -W1 | 1.50 |
|  |  |  |  | 0*3.5 | 0*3.5 | $1 / 2 * 1.5$ | 1*1.5 | 0*3.5 |  |

(Please note that the ranking order is the same obtained without Cut 1 just by a coincidence.)

### 4.3 Koya System

The Koya system is defined only for round-robin tournaments. This does not mean that its use in a Swiss tournament is forbidden - but Organisers who intend to use it must define it in their tournament rules ([4.1]). An Arbiter however cannot introduce it as an additional tie-break because they can choose only among the methods listed in [5].

## Exercise 16

In the round-robin tournament, determine the tie-break values and the rankings for all players using the Koya system (KS). In case of persistent ties, apply the Limit modifier to each group of tied players until achieving, if possible, a unique ranking.

In the Koya system, we sum the points obtained by each player against opponents who scored at least half of the maximum possible [9.2] - in our case, $5 / 2=2.5$ points. For clarity, we record all contributions due to players with a sufficient score along with the achieved result, while we marked the results against opponents with a score below the required minimum with a "-".

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | SB-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | =W5 | +W2 | +B3 | -W4 | +B6 | 2.0 |
|  |  |  |  | - | 1 | 1 | - | - |  |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 3.5 | +W6 | -B1 | +W5 | =W3 | +B4 | 0.5 |
|  |  |  |  | - | 0 | - | 1/2 | - |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | +W4 | +B6 | -W1 | = $\mathrm{B}^{1}$ | +W5 | 0.5 |
|  |  |  |  | - | - | 0 | 1/2 | - |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1.5 | -B3 | -B5 | =W6 | +B1 | -W2 | 1.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 |  |
| 5 | Franck | 1950 | 1.5 | = $\mathrm{B}_{1}$ | +W4 | -B2 | -W6 | -B3 | 0.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1/2 | - | 0 | - | 0 |  |
| 6 | Helene | 2000 | 1.5 | -B2 | -W3 | = 84 | +B5 | -W1 | 0.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | - | - | 0 |  |

The tie between players \#2 and \#3 persists, so we will try to apply the Limit modifier [14.5] to these two players. Since the players are divided into only two groups with the same score, increasing the score limit by half a point at a time is useless, as at some point the contributions will simply be all ignored. By decreasing the limit score by half a point at a time, however, we will reach the point where all the results obtained will be considered, so the sum of the contributions becomes equal to the score. In conclusion, with the Koya system it is not possible to break this tie; we will have to resort to the next tie-break method provided for by the tournament regulations, or to the drawing of sorts [4.2].

At the end of the chapter, let's compare the outcomes in the Swiss tournament obtained using the tie-break systems examined thus far, which are commonly employed in these competitions. The following table, sorted according to the Buchholz system, illustrates the player's ranking given by each tie-break method, with different colours denoting positions to help a quick visual comparison of the different systems (matching colours show unsettled ties).

Sonneborn-Berger systems yield fewer persisting ties than systems relying on Buchholz. This seems to show a better discriminatory capacity, although further evidence is needed. The ability to distinctly differentiate between tied players is of course a positive attribute of a tie-break system - indeed, it is its primary purpose. However, discrimination alone is not enough - it must also be done well, meaning that the resulting ranking should ideally
reflect the players' playing strength expressed in the tournament. Yet, this discussion delves into a very complex issue that extends far beyond our objectives.

| RNK | \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | BH | BH-C1 | AOB | FB | SB | SB-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4,0 | 13,0 | 12,0 | 13,6 | 13,5 | 9,50 | 8,50 |
| 2 | 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3,5 | 15,5 | 13,0 | 13,4 | 15,0 | 10,50 | 9,25 |
| 3 | 4 | David | 2050 | 3,5 | 15,0 | 11,5 | 13,4 | 14,0 | 9,75 | 8,00 |
| 4 | 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3,5 | 12,5 | 11,0 | 12,6 | 13,5 | 8,00 | 7,25 |
| 5 | 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3,5 | 12,5 | 11,0 | 13,3 | 13,5 | 7,25 | 5,75 |
| 6 | 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3,0 | 12,0 | 11,0 | 13,3 | 12,0 | 6,50 | 5,50 |
| 7 | 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2,5 | 13,5 | 12,0 | 13,0 | 12,5 | 5,25 | 3,75 |
| 8 | 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2,5 | 13,5 | 12,0 | 12,8 | 12,5 | 5,75 | 4,25 |
| 9 | 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2,5 | 8,5 | 7,5 | 13,4 | 10,0 | 4,25 | 3,25 |
| 10 | 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2,0 | 12,0 | 11,0 | 12,2 | 12,0 | 3,50 | 2,50 |
| 11 | 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2,0 | 11,5 | 9,5 | 15,0 | 11,5 | 4,00 | 4,00 |
| 12 | 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2,0 | 11,0 | 9,0 | 13,2 | 10,5 | 4,50 | 3,00 |
| 13 | 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1,5 | 14,5 | 12,5 | 11,9 | 13,5 | 3,25 | 1,25 |
| 14 | 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1,5 | 14,0 | 12,0 | 12,1 | 13,5 | 4,25 | 4,25 |
| 15 | 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1,5 | 9,0 | 7,5 | 12,8 | 9,5 | 2,25 | 2,25 |
| 16 | 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1,0 | 13,0 | 11,5 | 10,9 | 12,5 | 1,50 | 0,00 |


| Key: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## 5 TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS BASED ON RATING AND PERFORMANCE

Whenever unrated players are involved, these tie-breaks are undefined and should therefore be removed from the tie-break list. However, Organisers can use them if they wish so, provided that they clearly define the rules for the management of such players in the tournament regulations. Alternatively, the chief arbiter of the tournament can establish these rules and make them public before the tournament begins. In either case, those rules must be:

- Impartial (based solely on the chess-related characteristics of the player)
- Fair (should not personally favour or disadvantage any player)
- Comprehensive (must handle all possible cases)
- Unambiguous (should leave no doubts about application in every possible scenario)

All tie-breaks in this category are based solely on games actually played on-the-board, while unplayed games are ignored. For example, for a player who missed two games in a nine-round tournament, only the seven valid results are considered, and the average is calculated by dividing by seven (not nine!).

When ratings have decimals (e.g., in averages), the result is always rounded to the nearest whole number, following the convention $4 / 5(3.4 \rightarrow 3$, but $3.5 \rightarrow 4)$.

### 5.1 Average Rating of opponents (ARO)

This is the average of all the ratings of the opponents who were actually met on-the-board [10.1]; When ratings are reliable, we can assume this average to be a good estimate of the strength of the encountered opposition -the underlying idea being that the same score achieved against stronger opposition carries greater merit.

This tie-break is independent of the achieved results and can therefore be calculated even while the round is still in progress - the only required information is that the game has actually taken place. In a tournament with predetermined pairings, such as a round-robin, where unplayed games are treated the same as played ones, this tie-break can even be calculated at the beginning of the tournament (and favours lower rated players).

For this tie-break, unique in its category, the Cut modifier can be applied.

## Exercise 17

In the Swiss tournament, using the $A R O$ system, determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

As usual, we start from the crosstable, adding data as needed - here, we need all the opponents' ratings. The average is calculated adding up all valid contributions and then dividing by their number - while all unplayed rounds are completely ignored.

As an example, let's see in detail the calculations for player \#4. Their opponents are \#12 (rating 1650), \#13 (1600), \#3 (2100) and \#1 (2200). The unplayed game in the second round is discarded.

The average of ratings (ARO) is given by the sum of opponents rating divided by their number: $\operatorname{ARO}=(1650+1600+2100+2200) / 4$. Hence, $\operatorname{ARO}=7550 / 4=1887,5 \rightarrow 1888$. The calculation of the ARO for all other players, which is carried out using the same procedure, is left as an exercise for the reader.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ARO |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | + B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 | 1880 |
| 2 |  |  |  | 1750 | 1900 | 2200 | 1450 | 2100 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W2 | 1940 |
|  |  |  |  | 1700 | 1950 | 1850 | 2050 | 2150 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | + B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 1888 |
|  |  |  |  | 1650 | -- | 1600 | 2100 | 2200 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | = 2150 | +B15 | = W 4 | 1820 |
|  | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 1820 |
| 16 |  |  |  | 1850 | 1700 | 1900 | 2150 | 1500 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 1813 |
| 6 |  |  |  | 1550 | 2100 | -- | 1750 | 1850 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | = B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 1863 |
|  |  |  |  | 2100 | 1450 | 2000 | -- | 1900 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | = B16 | +W14 | - 2100 | +W13 | -W6 | 1730 |
|  | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {P7 }}$ | +W10 | 1690 |
| 5 |  |  |  | 1600 | 1500 | 1700 | 1900 | 1750 |  |


| 12 |  | 1650 | 20 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 2050 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 12 |  | 1650 | 2.0 | 2050 | -- | -- | -- | -- |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 20 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 1860 |
|  | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | 1900 | 2000 | 1750 | 2200 | 1450 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 20 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 1800 |
|  | Paul |  |  | 1950 | 1850 | -- | -- | 1600 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 1975 |
|  | Jessica |  |  | 2200 | 1750 | -- | -- | -- |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | + B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 1930 |
|  |  |  |  | 2000 | 2200 | 2050 | 1850 | 1550 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | - 215 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1760 |
| 10 |  |  |  | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1880 |
|  | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | 2150 | 1800 | 1500 | 1950 | 2000 |  |

## Exercise 18

In the Swiss tournament, using the ARO Cut-1 system (AROC), determine the tie-break values and ranking order for all players.

The only difference from the previous exercise is the choice of the contribution to be cut, which is always the one related to the least significant result. In the case of AROC, which is based on ratings, the least significant encounter is that with the lowest rated opponent. This contribution must therefore be the one to be discarded before calculating the average.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ARO |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 | 1988 |
| 2 |  |  |  | 1750 | 1900 | 2200 | 1450 | 2100 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | =B4 | =W2 | 2000 |
| 3 |  |  |  | 1700 | 1950 | 1850 | 2050 | 2150 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | + B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 1983 |
|  | Alyx |  |  | 1650 | -- | 1600 | 2100 | 2200 |  |
| 1 |  | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = 44 | 1900 |
|  | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 1900 |
| 16 |  |  |  | 1850 | 1700 | 1900 | 2150 | 1500 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 1900 |
| 6 |  |  |  | 1550 | 2100 | -- | 1750 | 1850 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 2000 |
| 11 |  |  |  | 2100 | 1450 | 2000 | -- | 1900 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | = B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 1800 |
|  |  |  |  | 1450 | 1550 | 2100 | 1600 | 1950 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | =B7 | +W10 | 1738 |
|  |  |  |  | 1600 | 1500 | 1700 | 1900 | 1750 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 1963 |
|  |  |  |  | 1900 | 2000 | 1750 | 2200 | 1450 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 1900 |
|  |  |  |  | 1950 | 1850 | -- | -- | 1600 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 2050 | -- | -- | -- | -- |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 2200 |
|  |  |  |  | 2200 | 1750 | -- | -- | -- |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 2025 |
|  |  |  |  | 2000 | 2200 | 2050 | 1850 | 1550 |  |


| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 15 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1838 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | 1500 | 2150 | 1450 | 2000 | 1700 |  |
| 10 |  |  |  | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1975 |
|  | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | 2150 | 1800 | 1500 | 1950 | 2000 |  |

For player \#12, who played only one game, after the cut there is nothing left to calculate a tie-break value. Hence, their ARO is undefined. Incidentally, there is no definite rule to handle this case.

### 5.2 Performance rating in the tournament (TPR)

The aim of this tie-break is to estimate (approximately) how well a competitor has played based on their results, in relation to the opponents' playing strength as represented by their ratings.
When two players face each other, the expected score (i.e., the statistical probability of winning) is determined by the difference between their ratings, as per the table in section 8.1.1 of the FIDE Rating Regulations (FIDE Handbook B.02). If a player faced several opponents and achieved a given average score, the table provides the corresponding rating difference for that average score. The performance value is obtained by adding this rating difference to the player's ARO, and it is an approximate estimate of the rating that the player would have needed to achieve those results against that opposition (for more details see the in-depth box on the next page).

Note: if two players obtained equal over-the-board scores, the rating difference is of course the same. The ranking yielded by this method is therefore the very same given by ARO. However, this is not always the case, because the same final score can be obtained with different contributions by unplayed rounds, which the tie-breaker disregards.

## What is the meaning of TPR?

To clarify the meaning of TPR, let's calculate the expected score of a player, say \#2, assuming a rating equal to the performance. To do that, we need to find the rating differences with respect to each opponent met, then we proceed to find the expected score for each game using the table in B.028.1.2 (see below), which is the mirror image of the table mentioned above.

| d | dp |  | d | dp |  | d | dp |  | d | dp |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Rtg Dif | H | L | Rtg Dif | H | L | Rtg Dif | H | L | Rtg Dif | H | L |
| 0-3 | . 50 | . 50 | 92-98 | . 63 | . 37 | 198-206 | . 76 | . 24 | 345-357 | . 89 | . 11 |
| 4-10 | . 51 | . 49 | 99-106 | . 64 | . 36 | 207-215 | . 77 | . 23 | 358-374 | . 90 | . 10 |
| 11-17 | . 52 | . 48 | 107-113 | . 65 | . 35 | 216-225 | . 78 | . 22 | 375-391 | . 91 | . 09 |
| 18-25 | . 53 | . 47 | 114-121 | . 66 | . 34 | 226-235 | . 79 | . 21 | 392-411 | . 92 | . 08 |
| 26-32 | . 54 | . 46 | 122-129 | . 67 | . 33 | 236-245 | . 80 | . 20 | 412-432 | . 93 | . 07 |
| 33-39 | . 55 | . 45 | 130-137 | . 68 | . 32 | 246-256 | . 81 | . 19 | 433-456 | . 94 | . 06 |
| 40-46 | . 56 | . 44 | 138-145 | . 69 | . 31 | 257-267 | . 82 | . 18 | 457-484 | . 95 | . 05 |
| 47-53 | . 57 | . 43 | 146-153 | . 70 | . 30 | 268-278 | . 83 | . 17 | 485-517 | . 96 | . 04 |
| 54-61 | . 58 | . 42 | 154-162 | . 71 | . 29 | 279-290 | . 84 | . 16 | 518-559 | . 97 | . 03 |
| 62-68 | . 59 | . 41 | 163-170 | . 72 | . 28 | 291-302 | . 85 | . 15 | 560-619 | . 98 | . 02 |
| 69-76 | . 60 | . 40 | 171-179 | . 73 | . 27 | 303-315 | . 86 | . 14 | 620-735 | . 99 | . 01 |
| 77-83 | . 61 | . 39 | 180-188 | . 74 | . 26 | 316-328 | . 87 | . 13 | $>735$ | 1.0 | . 00 |
| 84-91 | . 62 | . 38 | 189-197 | . 75 | . 25 | 329-344 | . 88 | . 12 |  |  |  |

Using the performance value (2120) instead of the rating (2150) and remembering that the rules limit the rating differences to $\pm 400$ points (see B.02-8.3.1), we find:

| Opp. | Rating | Rating difference | dp |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: |
| 10 | 1750 | $2120-1750=+370$ | 0.90 |
| 7 | 1900 | $2120-1900=+220$ | 0.78 |
| 1 | 2200 | $2120-2200=-80$ | 0.39 |
| 16 | 1450 | $2120-1450=+670 \rightarrow+400$ | 0.92 |
| 3 | 2100 | $2120-2100=+20$ | 0.53 |

The expected score Pa is the sum of the winning probabilities, i.e.,
$\mathrm{Pa}=0.90+0.78+0.39+0.92+0.53=3.52$
This value approximates the real score, but indeed the approximation is not a brilliant one. Had we calculated the expected score by means of the averaged ratings (ARO), as it was prescribed in past rules, instead of round by round as is the rule today, we would have obtained a more precise result:

TPR-ARO $=2120-1880=240$, hence $\mathrm{Pd}=0.80$, and $\mathrm{Pa}=5 \times 0.80=4.0$ (but the results are not usually that precise).
In summary, TPR is an approximation (and not a very precise one...) of the rating the player should have in order to justify their result (we will see presently that PTP is a better estimate for this value).

## Exercise 19

In the Swiss tournament, calculate the TPR of players \#2, \#6 and \#12.
ARO is of course calculated as we did in the previous exercise. For convenience, let's reproduce the table from B.02-8.1.1

| P | dp | P | dp | P | dp | p | dp | P | dp | p | dp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1.0 | 800 | . 83 | 273 | . 66 | 117 | . 49 | -7 | . 32 | -133 | . 15 | -296 |
| . 99 | 677 | . 82 | 262 | . 65 | 110 | . 48 | -14 | . 31 | -141 | . 14 | -309 |
| . 98 | 589 | . 81 | 251 | . 64 | 102 | . 47 | -21 | . 30 | -149 | . 13 | -322 |
| . 97 | 538 | . 80 | 240 | . 63 | 95 | . 46 | -29 | . 29 | -158 | . 12 | -336 |
| . 96 | 501 | . 79 | 230 | . 62 | 87 | . 45 | -36 | . 28 | -166 | . 11 | -351 |
| . 95 | 470 | . 78 | 220 | . 61 | 80 | . 44 | -43 | . 27 | -175 | . 10 | -366 |
| . 94 | 444 | . 77 | 211 | . 60 | 72 | . 43 | -50 | . 26 | -184 | . 09 | -383 |
| . 93 | 422 | . 76 | 202 | . 59 | 65 | . 42 | -57 | . 25 | -193 | . 08 | -401 |
| . 92 | 401 | . 75 | 193 | . 58 | 57 | . 41 | -65 | . 24 | -202 | . 07 | -422 |
| . 91 | 383 | . 74 | 184 | . 57 | 50 | . 40 | -72 | . 23 | -211 | . 06 | -444 |
| . 90 | 366 | . 73 | 175 | . 56 | 43 | . 39 | -80 | . 22 | -220 | . 05 | -470 |
| . 89 | 351 | . 72 | 166 | . 55 | 36 | . 38 | -87 | . 21 | -230 | . 04 | -501 |
| . 88 | 336 | . 71 | 158 | . 54 | 29 | . 37 | -95 | . 20 | -240 | . 03 | -538 |
| . 87 | 322 | . 70 | 149 | . 53 | 21 | . 36 | -102 | . 19 | -251 | . 02 | -589 |
| . 86 | 309 | . 69 | 141 | . 52 | 14 | . 35 | -110 | . 18 | -262 | . 01 | -677 |
| . 85 | 296 | . 68 | 133 | . 51 | 7 | . 34 | -117 | . 17 | -273 | . 00 | -800 |
| . 84 | 284 | . 67 | 125 | . 50 | 0 | . 33 | -125 | . 16 | -284 |  |  |

Now let's consider Player \#2 and calculate their ARO.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ARO |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B 10 | +W 7 | $=\mathrm{B} 1$ | +W 16 | $=\mathrm{B} 3$ | 1880 |
|  |  |  |  | 1900 | 2200 | 1450 | 2100 |  |  |

Player \#2 scored 4 points in five games, achieving an average score of $p=4 / 5=0.8$. We look up this value in the table, finding that it corresponds to an expected rating difference $\mathrm{dp}=240$ points. Adding this difference to the player's ARO, we find

TPR $=$ ARO $+\mathrm{dp}=1880+240=2120$.
Let's now proceed to player \#6, whose unplayed game will be ignored (i.e., discarded):

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ARO |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B 14 | -W 3 | +BYE | +W 10 | +B 8 | 1813 |
|  |  |  |  | -- | 1750 | 1850 |  |  |  |

Since there are only four played games, while the PAB must be ignored, we have $p=2 / 4$ $=0.50$, corresponding to a $\mathrm{dp}=0$, and hence TPR $=1813+0=1813$.

Finally, let's consider player \#12, who played only one game.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | ARO |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W 4 | + BYE | + F14 | -- | -- | 2050 |
|  |  |  |  | -- | -- | -- |  |  |  |

The average score is zero. In this case, the table indicates a hypothetical rating difference of -800 points (which is not derived from a probability calculation but rather a technical choice). Therefore, we have TPR $=2050-800=1250$.

## Exercise 20

In the Swiss tournament, calculate TPR for all players.
The preliminary calculation of ARO is made just as in previous exercises, and we'll use the corresponding results. Since unplayed games must be ignored, we include the scores adjusted excluding the unrated games and the actual number N of played games.

| $\#$ | NAME | ELO | ARO | SCORE | ADJ SC | N | p | dp | TPR |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 1880 | 4.0 | 4.0 | 5 | 0.80 | 240 | 2120 |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 1940 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 5 | 0.70 | 149 | 2089 |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 1888 | 3.5 | 3.0 | 4 | 0.88 | 193 | 2081 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 1820 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 5 | 0.70 | 149 | 1969 |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 1820 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 5 | 0.70 | 149 | 1969 |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 1813 | 3.0 | 2.0 | 4 | 0.75 | 0 | 1813 |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 1863 | 2.5 | 1.5 | 4 | 0.63 | -87 | 1776 |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 1730 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 5 | 0.50 | 0 | 1730 |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 1690 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 5 | 0.50 | 0 | 1690 |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 1800 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 3 | 0.67 | 125 | 1925 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 1860 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 5 | 0.40 | -72 | 1788 |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2050 | 2.0 | 0.0 | 1 | 2.00 | -800 | 1250 |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1930 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 5 | 0.30 | -149 | 1781 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1760 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 5 | 0.30 | -149 | 1611 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1975 | 1.5 | 0.0 | 2 | 0.75 | -800 | 1175 |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1880 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 5 | 0.20 | -240 | 1640 |

### 5.3 Average performance rating of opponents (APRO)

APRO is the average of the opponents' performances (TPR) rounded to the nearest whole number ([10.4]). The underlying idea is that if TPR approximates the playing strength expressed in the tournament by a player, the average of the opponents' TPRs approximates the average strength of the opposition actually faced. Consequently, the same result achieved against stronger opposition is considered more valuable. In other words, this tie-break emphasizes the quality of results against stronger opponents.

On the other hand, to calculate APRO, you need to compute the TPR of all opponents, making it a somewhat laborious tie-break.

## Exercise 21

In the Swiss tournament, determine the ranking of 3.5-points players using APRO system.
Of course, the (preliminary) calculation of ARO is made just as in the above exercises, and we'll use the corresponding results. Since unplayed games must be ignored, we include the scores adjusted excluding the unrated games and the actual number N of played games.

For our convenience, we'll use the TPR values found in the previous exercise, including them in the crosstable for each opponent. Then we calculate the averages, excluding all the unplayed games.

| \# | NAME | TPR | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | APRO |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 2089 | 3.5 | = W 11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | =W 2 | 1904 |
|  |  |  |  | 1776 | 1813 | 1730 | 2081 | 2120 |  |
| 4 | David | 2081 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 | 1772 |
| 4 |  |  |  | 1250 | --- | 1781 | 2089 | 1969 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 1969 | 3.5 | +W9 | = B13 | =W2 | + B15 | =W4 | 1789 |
|  |  |  |  | 1175 | 1781 | 2120 | 1788 | 2081 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1969 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 1805 |
|  |  |  |  | 1730 | 1776 | 1611 | 2120 | 1788 |  |

Sorting the crosstable based on APRO, the new ranking results (\#3, \#16, \#1, \#4), whereas ARO and TPR both yield (\#3, \#4, \#1, 16) - the different choice of tie-breaks gives a different composition of the podium!

### 5.4 Perfect tournament performance (PTP)

The TPR provides an approximate indication of what the rating of a player should be to achieve the results they have actually attained. The idea behind PTP is to assess this value as precisely as possible, so that the expected score for that rating accurately corresponds to the achieved score; hence, the definition in [10.3]. This tie-break can be considered an improved version of the TPR and is a strength indicator that is certainly more reliable than those seen so far, even though it inevitably reflects the effects of any imprecise ratings. The drawback is that the process is quite laborious. It requires the repeated use of the table in B.02-8.1.2 and long and repeated sequences of calculations, making it suitable for computer calculation - but not at all for manual computation.

## Exercise 22

In the Swiss tournament, determine the Perfect Performance of player \#3.
For this calculation we need the results of the player and the opponents' ratings.

| $\#$ | NAME | SCOR | ELO | ARO | TPR | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 3.5 | 2100 | 1940 | 2089 | $=\mathrm{W} 11$ | +B 6 | +W 8 | $=\mathrm{B} 4$ | $=\mathrm{W} 2$ |
|  |  |  |  |  |  | 2050 | 2150 |  |  |  |

In general, the PTP value should not be too far from the TPR, which in this case is 2089. For want of better information, let's take this as a starting point. To begin with, let's calculate the score we'd expect if the player had this value as a rating, and compare it to the actual score (3.5) - in this calculation, the $\pm 400$ points cut does not apply.

| Opp. | Rating | Rating difference |  | dp | Pa |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 1700 | $2089-1700=$ | +389 | 0.91 |  |
| 6 | 1950 | $2089-1950=$ | +139 | 0.69 |  |
| 8 | 1850 | $2089-1850=$ | +239 | 0.80 |  |
| 4 | 2050 | $2089-2050=$ | +39 | 0.55 |  |
| 2 | 2150 | $2089-2150=$ | -61 | 0.42 | $\mathbf{3 . 3 7}$ |

The expected score we obtained il lower than actual score approximately by 4\%, so we should increase our PTP estimate. For the next attempt, let's then increase it by about $4 \%$, resulting in the value 2170, and repeat the calculation.

| Opp. | Rating | Rating difference |  | $\mathbf{d p}$ | Pa |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1700 | $2170-1700=$ | +470 | 0.95 |  |
| 6 | 1950 | $2170-1950=$ | +220 | 0.78 |  |
| 8 | 1850 | $2170-1850=$ | +320 | 0.87 |  |
| 4 | 2050 | $2170-2050=$ | +120 | 0.66 |  |
| 2 | 2150 | $2170-2150=$ | +20 | 0.53 | $\mathbf{3 . 7 9}$ |

Now our guess is too high, we then lower it to 2130 - which is the intermediate value between the previous two guesses, and once again repeat the calculation.

| Opp. | Rating | Rating difference |  | $\mathbf{d p}$ | Pa |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1700 | $2130-1700=$ | +430 | 0.93 |  |
| 6 | 1950 | $2130-1950=$ | +180 | 0.74 |  |
| 8 | 1850 | $2130-1850=$ | +280 | 0.84 |  |
| 4 | 2050 | $2130-2050=$ | +80 | 0.61 |  |
| 2 | 2150 | $2130-2150=$ | -20 | 0.47 | $\mathbf{3 . 5 9}$ |

With each iteration, the resulting expected score gets closer to the actual score, making the estimation of TPT more accurate. The process should continue until the smallest value that yields the desired result is obtained. To reach the final result, four more steps are required (omitted here), and the outcome is 2112.

| Opp. | Rating | Rating difference | dp | Pa |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| 1 | 1700 | $2112-1700=$ | +412 | 0.93 |  |
| 6 | 1950 | $2112-1950=$ | +162 | 0.71 |  |
| 8 | 1850 | $2112-1850=$ | +262 | 0.82 |  |
| 4 | 2050 | $2112-2050=$ | +62 | 0.59 |  |
| 2 | 2150 | $2112-2150=$ | -38 | 0.45 | 3.50 |

As we anticipated, to obtain results in a reasonable time, the calculation of this tie-break must be entrusted to a computer. We should however mention that the method outlined here has been chosen for its simplicity but is not the only possible approach - and certainly not the most efficient.

It's worth noting that the calculation of the PTP is theoretically impossible for a player who has achieved a score of zero, because no rating difference results in a win probability of zero. Therefore, a figurative value must be assigned to this tie-break, which the regulations set at 800 points less than the lowest-rated opponent.

From this tie-break stems the Average Perfect Performance of Opponents (APPO) [10.5], which, similar to APRO for TPR, is the average of PTPs of opponents faced on-the-board. Calculating this tie-break requires precomputing the PTPs for many players and then taking the average, but we won't do that here.

To conclude the chapter, we present once again a summary table of rating-based tiebreaks. The final standings according to the various tie-break systems are highlighted with colour codes, and the table is sorted by score and ARO (e.g., brown corresponds to the second position, red to the third; if the ranking were ordered by TPT, the order of players \#3 and \#4 would be reversed; if ordered by APRO, players \#4, \#16, and \#1 would be interchanged).

Here, it can be observed that the order of players \#12, \#15, and \#14 is not the same between ARO and TPR, despite having the same score (see note on page 35). This is because, for the calculation of TPR (as well as for all other rating-based tie-breaks), unplayed games are ignored, regardless of the reason and the attributed score. For TPR calculations, the scores of these players are not equivalent (players \#12 and \#9 have zero points!), and consequently, their respective dp values are not equivalent either.

| RNK | $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | ARO | TPR | APRO | TPT | APPO |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4,0 | 1880 | 2120 | 1856 | 2216 | 1852 |
| 2 | 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3,5 | 1940 | 2089 | 1904 | 2112 | 1934 |
| 3 | 4 | David | 2050 | 3,5 | 1888 | 2081 | 1772 | 2168 | 1962 |
| 4 | 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3,5 | 1820 | 1969 | 1789 | 2029 | 1974 |
| 5 | 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3,5 | 1820 | 1969 | 1805 | 2013 | 1799 |
| 6 | 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3,0 | 1813 | 1813 | 1846 | 1810 | 1836 |
| 7 | 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2,5 | 1863 | 1776 | 1840 | 1763 | 1836 |
| 8 | 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2,5 | 1730 | 1730 | 1915 | 1715 | 1924 |
| 9 | 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2,5 | 1690 | 1690 | 1719 | 1689 | 1676 |
| 10 | 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2,0 | 2050 | 1250 | 2081 | --- | 2168 |
| 11 | 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2,0 | 1860 | 1788 | 1776 | 1768 | 1767 |
| 12 | 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2,0 | 1800 | 1925 | 1775 | 1942 | 1756 |
| 13 | 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1,5 | 1975 | 1175 | 1805 | --- | 1802 |
| 14 | 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1,5 | 1930 | 1781 | 1879 | 1744 | 1909 |
| 15 | 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1,5 | 1760 | 1611 | 1869 | 1531 | 1890 |
| 16 | 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1,0 | 1880 | 1640 | 1717 | 1575 | 1871 |


| Key: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## 6 TIE-BREAKS BASED ON DIRECT ENCOUNTER (DE)

Those tie-breaks compare the results the players attained in facing each other. First, we need to extract those games from the general crosstable - and only them - to create a separate ranking (sometimes called "head-to-head"). This ranking is then used to break ties. In Swiss tournaments, all unplayed or forfeited games are excluded- however, the tournament rules could include them in the calculation [6.1.1]. In round-robin or other tournaments with predetermined pairings, forfeits count as normal matches [15.2].

As with most tie-breaks, some players can still be tied, even after applying the separate ranking. The peculiarity of the direct encounter is that, in this case, the process is (repeatedly) applied to the players still tied, until they are all untied, or it is no longer possible to untie any. Another peculiarity is that this tie-break can be inserted multiple times in the list; for example, we could have the direct encounter, followed by the Buchholz, and then again direct encounter.

If all the tied players faced each other, their separate crosstable is just as if they had played a round-robin among themselves. In Swiss tournaments, this happens rather seldom, due to the fact that the crosstable often contains "gaps". Even in this case, a player may still be first, regardless of any possible outcome of the missing matches [6.3].

Let's consider a simple example (see the crosstable on the right). Alyx won against everyone, Bruno won against everyone but Alyx; Charline and David, on the other hand, did not play against each other - however, even if they had, they couldn't have reached Alyx's score. Alyx would still be the first in any case and

|  | A | B | C | D |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Alyx | $*$ | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| Bruno | 0 | $*$ | 1 | 1 |
| Charline | 0 | 0 | $*$ | - |
| David | 0 | 0 | - | $*$ | is therefore ranked first. Once the first place is assigned, we observe that, regardless of the outcomes of the missing matches, no one could surpass Bruno either, so he is ranked second. However, certainty ends here - for the remaining players, we have no such assurances. At this point, the process restarts with the remaining players composing a new separate ranking until no more players can be untied (which is the case here, as only Charline and David are left, both with zero points). Then, we should proceed to the next tie-breaking system or drawing of lots.

### 6.1 Direct encounter in Swiss tournaments

## Exercise 23

In the Swiss tournament, rank all 3.5-points players using direct encounter (DE).
Let's extract the tied players' games from the general crosstable and compile the separate crosstable. David achieved the best results in the matches he played, but the crosstable includes several gaps. We need to investigate what could have happened, based on all the potential outcomes of the unplayed games. In theory, we should try all possible combinations of outcomes, but we don't really do all that. A useful practical method is to consider all the unplayed matches (in blue in the adjacent table) as wins. Even though this may yield some "impossible" scores, it makes readily apparent whether those matches could be decisive or not. Here, for example, it's clear that Stephan's score (and indeed anyone's) could have

|  | A | C | D | S |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alyx | $*$ | - | $1 / 2$ | - |
| Charline | - | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | - |
| David | $1 / 2$ | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | - |
| Stephan | - | - | - | $*$ |


|  | A | C | D | S |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alyx | $*$ | 1 | $1 / 2$ | 1 |
| Charline | 1 | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | 1 |
| David | $1 / 2$ | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | 1 |
| Stephan | 1 | 1 | 1 | $*$ | surpassed David's, so we don't have a definite winner, and no ties can be broken.

## Exercise 24

In the Swiss tournament, rank all 3.5-points players using direct encounter (DE).
Once again, let's compile the separate crosstable. Now we have only one game, and once again no tie can be broken. incidentally, we observe that for the scoregroups at 2.0 and 1.5 points there are no played games at all, and therefore no tie can be broken there too.

|  | E | I | M |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Helene | $*$ | - | 1 |
| Irina | - | $*$ | - |
| Maria | 0 | - | $*$ |

## Exercise 25

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the Direct Encounter tie-break.
For our convenience, let's highlight in different colours the four groups of tied players.

| \# | NAME | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Charline | 6,5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | -W2 | +B16 | =W1 | +W14 | +B10 |
| 1 | Alyx | 6,0 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | =W4 | =B6 | =B3 | =W16 | +B8 |
| 2 | Bruno | 6,0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | +B3 | = W 4 | -W6 | =B15 | =W5 |
| 4 | David | 6,0 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B 1 | =B2 | =W16 | = B6 | +W15 |
| 6 | Franck | 6,0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | = W1 | +B2 | =W4 | +B16 |
| 7 | Genevieve | 4,5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | -B10 | +W13 | +W9 | +B14 |
| 8 | Irina | 4,5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | =B11 | =W15 | +B5 | -W1 |
| 16 | Stephan | 4,5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | -W3 | = B4 | = B 1 | -W6 |
| 5 | Helene | 4,0 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = B7 | +W10 | -B14 | +B9 | -W8 | = B 2 |
| 10 | Lais | 4,0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | +W7 | +B12 | +W11 | -W3 |
| 14 | Paul | 4,0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | +W5 | +W11 | -B3 | -W7 |
| 15 | Reine | 4,0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | +W12 | = B8 | =W2 | -B4 |
| 11 | Maria | 3,5 | = 33 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | =W8 | -B14 | -B10 | = W13 |
| 9 | Jessica | 3,0 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | +B13 | -W5 | -B7 | = W12 |
| 12 | Nick | 3,0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | -B15 | -W10 | =B13 | =B9 |
| 13 | Opal | 2,5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | -W9 | -B7 | =W12 | =B11 |

Let's begin with the 6.0-points scoregroup, which yields the separate crosstable reported on the side. Here we observe that Franck scored two points, and is first, Bruno scored one point and is last, whereas Alyx and David, who scored 1.5 points each, are still tied. We should then apply once again the procedure to those two players, building a new separate

| $(6 \mathrm{p})$ | A | B | D | F |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alyx | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | $1 / 2$ | $1 / 2$ |
| Bruno | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | 0 |
| David | $1 / 2$ | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | $1 / 2$ |
| Franck | $1 / 2$ | 1 | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | crosstable including only them.

This attempt does not bring any new information, as these players had a draw. Hence, we can't break this tie, which must be resolved with the subsequent tie-breaks.

|  | A | D |
| :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Alyx | $*$ | $1 / 2$ |
| David | $1 / 2$ | $*$ |

In the second scoregroup, at 4.5 points, not all players met each other. From the results we observe that, had Irina played and won with Genevieve, she would have reached the same score as Stephan. We cannot determine a clear first place - and should then abandon this attempt and proceed to the next tie-break.

In the third scoregroup, at 4.0 points, the situation is just the same. Finally, the last scoregroup, at 3.0 points, includes only two players who have drawn against each other.

All in all, once again, the tie-break based on direct encounters yields poor results. This is in fact rather expected; direct

| $(4$ p.) | E | L | P | R |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Helene | $*$ | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Lais | 0 | $*$ | - | 0 |
| Paul | 0 | - | $*$ | - |
| Reine | 1 | 1 | - | $*$ | encounter tie-breaks have limited effectiveness. That's why its use is relatively infrequent, and often, when used, it appears as the first tie-break, followed by other methods with better differentiating power.

### 6.2 Direct encounter in round-robin tournaments

## Exercise 26

## Determine the standings of the round-robin tournament through Direct Encounter.

The application of this method to round-robin tournaments is not substantially different from the case of Swiss-system tournaments - it is however a bit simpler, because unplayed games are not a factor. Also, the composition of the separate crosstable is easier - in fact, we only need to remove from the general crosstable all the rows and columns related to players not involved in the tie-break.

Here, we have two scoregroups to be subject to tie-break, for each of which we need to create the separate crosstable.

In the first scoregroup (see crosstable to the right), Alyx is first, with two points. Bruno and Charline are still tied - we should therefore apply the method once again, to only those two players, but this is useless because they drew. Since we cannot break this tie, we need to proceed to the next tie-break.

|  | A | B | C |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Alyx | $*$ | 1 | 1 |
| Bruno | 0 | $*$ | $1 / 2$ |
| Charline | 0 | $1 / 2$ | $*$ |

For the second scoregroup, we need to remember that the forfeit win is considered just as any regularly played game [15.2]. In this case we can compose a complete ranking, with Helene first with 1.5 points, followed by Franck with 1 point and David with $1 / 2$ point.

|  | D | E | F |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| David | $*$ | $1 / 2$ | 0 |
| Helene | $1 / 2$ | $*$ | + |
| Franck | 1 | - | $*$ |

## 7 OTHER TIE-BREAK SYSTEMS FOR INDIVIDUAL TOURNAMENTS

In this chapter, we will discuss individual tie-breaks of the "B" type ([7]), which only use the player's results. Those tie-breaks allow players to calculate or predict their tie-break value while still playing the round (which is impossible, for example, with the Buchholz, which depends on the results the previous opponents will obtain). These tie-breaks are all very easy to calculate and mostly ignore unplayed games. Some of them are very similar to each other, so we will discuss them together.

### 7.1 Number of wins (WIN) and Number of games won (WON)

The only difference between these two tie-breaks is that the first one (WIN) considers all games for which a score equal to that assigned for a win has been given, including PAB (Pairing Allocated Bye) and forfeit (and also any full-point byes, which are deprecated by the regulations but could still be awarded in certain specific cases). The second one (WON), on the other hand, only considers the games actually won on-the-board.

## Exercise 27

For this tie-break we count the number of games which ended with a score corresponding to a win - independent of the nature of the win. The tie-break value is the total count.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | WIN |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | = B3 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = ${ }^{\text {4 }}$ | = W2 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = ${ }^{\text {1 }}$ | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {7 }}$ | +W10 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | = B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |

The practical application of the method is straightforward, we only need to pay attention to unplayed games. For example, among the results obtained by player \#9, only the last of their three unplayed games counts, because this is a PAB and therefore is equivalent to a win. On the contrary, the other two unplayed games - a half point bye (HPB) and a forfeit loss - are not wins and therefore are not counted.

## Exercise 28

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the WON tie-break system.
For this tie-break we count the number of games actually won on-the-board. The tie-break value is the total count.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | WON |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | = B1 | +W16 | = B3 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | = W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | = W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W 2 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | =B7 | +W10 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | = B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W 1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |

Again, the practical application of the method is straightforward. Contrary to WIN system, all unplayed games are ignored (e.g., see player \#9).

### 7.2 Number of games played with Black (BPG) and won with Black (BWG)

The first of these tie-breaks (BPG) considers only the games actually played with Black, while all unplayed games are ignored. The second one (BWG) only counts the won games. The underlying principle is that playing with Black is more difficult than playing with White and does therefore deserve to be rewarded.

## Exercise 29

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the BPG tie-break system.
For this tie-break we count the number of games actually played on-the-board with Black. The tie-break value is the total count.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | BPG |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | =B3 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | = W2 | +B15 | = W4 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | = W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = ${ }^{1}$ | = W2 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = B7 | +W10 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 2 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W 1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 |  |

## Exercise 30

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the BWG tie-break system.
For this tie-break we count the number of games actually won on-the-board with Black. The tie-break value is the total count.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | BWG |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | = B1 | +W16 | = B3 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | = W 11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W 2 | 1 |
| 4 | David |  |  | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
|  |  | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | = BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | - 1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | = W 8 | +B11 | +W 7 0 | -B2 | +W15 0 | 1 |


| 6 |  |  | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 25 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {7 }}$ | +W10 | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | = B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 0 |
|  | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 20 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 1 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 1 |
|  | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 1 |
|  | Lais | 1750 |  | 1 | 0 +89 | 0 $-W 15$ | - 0 | - 0 |  |
| 10 |  |  | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 1 |

### 7.3 Games one elected to play (GE)

The logic of this tie-break is to penalize players who have chosen to play fewer games than others; the counting is trivial, we just need to be careful about which games not to count (a requested bye or a forfeit loss doesn't count, but a forfeited win does).

## Exercise 31

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the GE tie-break system.
In this tie-break we count the number of rounds in which the player was available to play, including possible games that were not played for reasons beyond the player's control. The tie-break value is the total count.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | GE |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | = 33 | 5 |
| 2 |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = ${ }^{\text {4 }}$ | = W 2 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | = BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 | 4 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = ${ }^{\text {7 }}$ | +W10 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |


| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 3 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 0 | 1 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |  |

We want to note the different handling between "voluntary absences" (VUR) and the games in which the player is available (unplayed games are highlighted in red and blue).

### 7.4 Sum of progressive scores (PS)

This tie-break is the sum of the player's scores at the end of each round, regardless of whether they played or not. The score from each round is added as many times as there are rounds remaining in the tournament, so the more advanced the round is, the less the result of a round weighs on the total.

Modifiers like Cut-1 or Cut-2 can be applied to this tie-break. Since the least significant addend is always the one from the first round (this is the minimum possible score), applying Cut-1 involves subtracting the result of the first round (which, however, continues to contribute as part of the scores in the subsequent rounds).

## Exercise 32

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the PS tie-break system.
We calculate the player's score after each round, then sum all the scores.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | PS |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | = B1 | +W16 | = B3 | 13.0 |
| 2 |  |  |  | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 4.0 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | = BYE | +W13 | =W3 | =B1 | 11.5 |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | =B13 | =W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 11.0 |
| 1 |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.5 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = 34 | = W2 | 11.0 |
| 3 |  |  |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | = W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 10.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 3.5 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | + B 8 | 6.0 |


| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 25 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 8.5 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | 0.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | = B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 5.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = B 7 | +W10 | 5.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 0.0 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 7.0 |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | + 2.0 | -W1 | - 2.0 | 7.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 6.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 |  |
| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | = W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 7.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 6.0 |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | = BYE | -F11 | $\underline{+ \text { BYE }}$ | 2.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 1.5 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -W2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 4.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 |  |

## Exercise 33

Determine the standings of the Swiss tournament through the PS-C1 tie-break system.
In this tie-break we need to calculate the score at the end of each round, then add all those scores but the smallest - which is of course the one after the first round.

| \# | NAME | ELO | SCORE | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | PS-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4.0 | +B10 | +W7 | =B1 | +W16 | = B3 | 12.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.5 | 3.5 | 4.0 |  |
| 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3.5 | =W11 | +B6 | +W8 | = B4 | = W2 | 10.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 |  |
| 4 | David | 2050 | 3.5 | +B12 | =BYE | +W13 | =W3 | = B1 | 10.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 3.0 | 3.5 |  |
| 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3.5 | +W9 | = B13 | = W2 | +B15 | = W 4 | 10.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.0 | 3.0 | 3.5 |  |
| 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3.5 | =W8 | +B11 | +W7 | -B2 | +W15 | 10.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 3.5 |  |
| 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3.0 | -B14 | -W3 | +BYE | +W10 | +B8 | 6.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 0.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.0 |  |
| 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2.5 | =B16 | +W14 | -B3 | +W13 | -W6 | 8.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2.5 | -W13 | -B15 | +W11 | = B7 | +W10 | 5.0 |
| 5 |  |  |  | 0.0 | 0.0 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2.5 | =B3 | -W16 | -B5 | +F9 | +W7 | 5.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.5 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 1.5 | 2.5 |  |
| 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2.0 | -W4 | +BYE | +F14 | -- | -- | 7.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 |  |
| 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2.0 | -B7 | +W5 | +B10 | -W1 | -B16 | 7.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 |  |
| 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2.0 | +W6 | -B8 | -F12 | -- | +B13 | 5.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 2.0 |  |


| 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1.5 | +B5 | =W1 | -B4 | -B8 | -W14 | 6.0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.5 |  |
| 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1.5 | +W15 | -B2 | -B16 | =W5 | -B11 | 5.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.5 | 1.5 |  |
| 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1.5 | -B1 | -W10 | =BYE | -F11 | +BYE | 2.5 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.5 | 0.5 | 1.5 |  |
| 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1.0 | -w2 | +B9 | -W15 | -B6 | -B5 | 4.0 |
|  |  |  |  | 0.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 |  |

Let's conclude this chapter comparing the results of the different systems. The following table shows the values resulting from each tie-break. The background colour of the cell represents the player's placement in the final ranking obtained with that system (for example, a black background in a cell indicates that, with that tie-break, the player would finish in the first position, and so on). Note that, among these tie-breaks, only those based on progressive scores (PS, PS-Cut 1) have a certain discriminatory power, while all other tie-breaks result in several residual ties.

| RNK | $\#$ | NAME | ELO | SCORE | WIN | WON | BPG | BWG | GE | PS | PS-C1 |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | 2 | Bruno | 2150 | 4,0 | 3 | 3 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 13,0 | 12,0 |
| 2 | 4 | David | 2050 | 3,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 4 | 11,5 | 10,5 |
| 3 | 1 | Alyx | 2200 | 3,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 5 | 11,0 | 10,0 |
| 4 | 3 | Charline | 2100 | 3,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 5 | 11,0 | 10,5 |
| 5 | 16 | Stephan | 1450 | 3,5 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 5 | 10,5 | 10,0 |
| 6 | 6 | Franck | 1950 | 3,0 | 3 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 5 | 6,0 | 6,0 |
| 7 | 8 | Irina | 1850 | 2,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 5 | 8,5 | 8,0 |
| 8 | 11 | Maria | 1700 | 2,5 | 2 | 1 | 2 | 0 | 5 | 5,5 | 5,0 |
| 9 | 5 | Helene | 2000 | 2,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 5 | 5,0 | 5,0 |
| 10 | 12 | Nick (W) | 1650 | 2,0 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 3 | 7,0 | 7,0 |
| 11 | 15 | Reine | 1500 | 2,0 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 7,0 | 7,0 |
| 12 | 14 | Paul | 1550 | 2,0 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 1 | 3 | 6,0 | 5,0 |
| 13 | 13 | Opal | 1600 | 1,5 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 7,0 | 6,0 |
| 14 | 7 | Genevieve | 1900 | 1,5 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 0 | 5 | 6,0 | 5,0 |
| 15 | 9 | Jessica | 1800 | 1,5 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 3 | 2,5 | 2,5 |
| 16 | 10 | Lais | 1750 | 1,0 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 | 5 | 4,0 | 4,0 |


| Key: | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |

## PART TWO - TEAM TOURNAMENTS

To compile the individual rankings of players in team tournaments, all the tie-break systems mentioned can be used. Additionally, other methods are needed to determine the order of placement for each team, introducing some more complexity compared to individual tournaments. The most obvious difference is the existence of two parallel scoring systems, team points (MP) and game points (GP), and many tie-breaks can be calculated by choosing either one of the two - and, in certain cases, even combining them (such as in Sonneborn-Berger). The score used for pairing, known as the primary score, is often (but not necessarily) also used as the first criterion for ranking. The other score, known as the secondary score, can be used in tie-breaks.

The tournament rules must specify which of the two is the primary score and which is secondary, and whether and how the latter should be used in pairings.

The calculation of tie-breaks requires extensive information. The following data are required (see paragraph 2.3, page 6 and following):

- Team composition
- Team (match) pairings
- Individual games pairings (this can be quite extensive)
- Sometimes, the board on which each game was played (board order)

While the first three are usually provided directly by the pairing software, the fourth usually is not immediately available and needs to be inferred from the pairings. In some tournaments, player placement follows the rating order, simplifying the process. In tournaments where board order is free, obtaining this information can be rather tedious.

Forfeits are rarer in team tournaments than in individual ones (but nonetheless they exist). There is no substantial difference in managing unplayed games or matches compared to individual tournaments.
In calculating tie-breaks for team tournaments, even more than in individual, it is recommended to use a spreadsheet if possible. This calculation may be required when the tournament management program does not handle the required tie-break, or a verification is necessary.
The scoring system used for team points in all examples is the traditional 2-1-0.

## 8 Match points versus game points (MPvGP)

This tie-break uses the secondary score to break ties left by the primary score. According to the tournament rules, team points (MP) can be used to break ties in the individual points (GP) standings, or (more often) vice versa.

## Exercise 34

The tournament management software usually provides those scores (more or less) automatically. Therefore, the application of this tie-break system is straightforward and only requires reordering the standings. The first table displays teams ordered by \{MP, GP\}, while the second shows the ordering \{GP, MP\}.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | 4b1/2 | 1b21/2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b31⁄2 |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | 8w21/2 | 4b1½ | 7w3 | 2b21⁄2 | 5w11⁄2 | +F | 3b2½ |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11/2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 11b3 | 1w21/2 | 13b3 | 5w31/2 | 3b1 | 2w11/2 | 9b2½ |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b21⁄2 | 4w3 | 5b3112 | 1w11/2 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | 1b1½ | 7w2 | 6w1 | 12b31⁄2 | 10b2 | 9w2 | 11w3 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 13b2 | 5w1 | 8b3 | $3 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11b21/2 | -F | 12w ${ }^{1 / 2} 2$ |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 2w1 | 12b4 | 3b1 | 14w3 | 7w2 | 8b2 | 4w11/2 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 6w2 | 14b21/2 | 4w1 | 11w21/2 | 2b1 | 7b2 | 5w1/2 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13 | 3b1½ | $11 \mathrm{w} 1^{11 / 2}$ | $12 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 7b1½ | 8w2 | 14b3 | 2w1 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 4w1 | 10b21⁄2 | 14w2 | 13b1½ | $6 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 12w2 | 8b1 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 7b2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11b2 | 9b1 | HPB | 10w1 | PAB |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 5b0 | 9w0 | 10w11/2 | $8 w^{1 / 2}$ | PAB | 11b2 | 6b1½ |


| \# | TEAM | GP | MP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Elephants | 18 | 10 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | $4 b^{1 / 2}$ | 1b21/2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b31122 |
| 1 | Antelopes | 17,5 | 10 | 8w21/2 | 4b1112 | 7w3 | 2b21/2 | 5w11⁄2 | +F | 3b2½ |
| 2 | Bonobos | 17 | 10 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11/2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 |
| 4 | Deer | 17 | 10 | 11b3 | 1w21/2 | 13b3 | 5w31⁄2 | 3b1 | 2w11⁄2 | 9b2½ |
| 3 | Cougars | 16 | 10 | 10w21/2 | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b21/2 | 4w3 | 5b31⁄2 | 1w11⁄2 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 15 | 7 | 1b1112 | 7w2 | 6w1 | 12b31/2 | 10b2 | 9w2 | 11w3 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 14,5 | 6 | 2w1 | 12b4 | 3b1 | 14w3 | 7w2 | 8b2 | 4w11/2 |
| 10 | Jackals | 13 | 5 | 3b1112 | 11w11⁄2 | 12b21/2 | 7b11⁄2 | 8w2 | 14b3 | 2w1 |
| 6 | Falcons | 12,5 | 7 | 13b2 | 5w1 | 8b3 | 3w11⁄2 | $11 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | -F | 12w21/2 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 11,5 | 6 | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | 10w21⁄2 | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB |
| 13 | Moose | 11,5 | 6 | 6w2 | $14 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 4w1 | $11 \mathrm{w} 2^{1 ⁄ 2}$ | 2b1 | 7b2 | $5 \mathrm{w} 1 / 2$ |
| 11 | Koalas | 11,5 | 4 | 4w1 | $10 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 14w2 | 13b1½ | 6w11⁄2 | 12w2 | 8b1 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 11,5 | 4 | 7b2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11 b 2 | 9b1 | HPB | 10w1 | PAB |
| 12 | Lynxes | 7,5 | 2 | 5b0 | 9w0 | 10w11/2 | $8 W^{1 / 2}$ | PAB | 11b2 | 6b1½ |

The resulting standings are in general rather different and could reward (or punish) different teams. This is why the choice of the primary score system must a/ways be made explicit before the tournament starts.

## 9 Sistema Buchholz (BH)

Once it's determined which score to use (MP or GP), there is no substantial difference between calculating the Buchholz for a team and that for an individual player in an individual tournament.

## Exercise 35

Using match points (MP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system (total).

For each participant and round, let's enter the scores of all opposing teams (MP or GP depending on the case - here both are shown, just as an example) into the team pairings crosstable (see table below).

| \# | Team | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 171/2 | 8w21/2 | 4b11/2 | 7w3 | 2b21/2 | $5 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | +F | 3b21/2 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  | 7 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  | 15,0 | 17,0 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 16,0 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11/2 | 13w3 | $4 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 10b3 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 5 |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  | 14,5 | 16,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 13,0 |

Team \#1 won a match by forfeit - the outcome of this match is therefore calculated as a win against a dummy opponent with the same score and result, just like in the individual case [16.4] (except, of course, that the dummy opponent is now a team, not a player). Therefore, in the corresponding cell, we enter the score (MP or GP) of the team itself.

As usual, we need to be careful with matches "unplayed on request" that are not followed by any round with availability to play [16.2.5]. In calculating the tie-break of the opposing teams, these matches should be considered as draws [16.3.2]. In our tournament, this happens in the last round for team \#7, whose score needs to be adjusted for all the opponents it faced (but not for the team itself).

| \# | Team | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | TOT |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 111/2 | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 2^{1 / 2}$ | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB |  |
|  | Adjusted MP |  |  | 1 | 1 | 0 | 2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 7 |
|  | Adjusted GP |  |  | 2 | 2 | 1 | 2,5 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 13,5 |

We can then compile a table in which, for each team, we list the score (here, MP) of the opposing team encountered in that round, adjusted as described above. This is the only score to adjust in our crosstable - all other unplayed matches are calculated at face value.

We thus obtain the following table, where the last column shows the sum of contributes per round, which is the final value of the Buchholz (matches for which the adjusted score of the opposing team is used are highlighted, and the table is already sorted by decreasing score and Buchholz). Note that, for the last round of team \#7, which is a requested bye, we use the actual rather than the adjusted score [16.4].

| $\#$ | TEAM | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | Adj <br> GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | BH |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | 10 | 17,5 | 7 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 64 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16,0 | 10 | 16,0 | 5 | 10 | 6 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 58 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 5 | 57 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 4 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 56 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18,0 | 10 | 18,0 | 2 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 55 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 7 | 12,5 | 6 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 2 | 46 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15,0 | 7 | 15,0 | 10 | 7 | 7 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 4 | 41 |


| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 6 | 11,5 | 7 | 4 | 10 | 4 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 52 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 6 | 14,5 | 10 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 7 | 10 | 50 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 7 | 13,5 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 44 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13,0 | 5 | 13,0 | 10 | 4 | 2 | 7 | 7 | 4 | 10 | 44 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 10 | 5 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 2 | 7 | 41 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 7 | 6 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 4 | 36 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 2 | 7,5 | 10 | 6 | 5 | 7 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 41 |

(Note: the fact that all ties here are resolved is but a lucky coincidence.)

## Exercise 36

Using match points (MP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system Cut-1 (BH-C1).

The calculation is very similar to the previous one, we just need to discard the contribute owed to the least significant value in each sum. We want to take care of possible forfeit losses (\#6, sixth round) or requested byes (\#14, fifth round, and \#7, seventh round), because the contributes from these matches are the first to be cut. The cut contributes are highlighted in colour (light red for less significant values, yellow for those due to voluntary absences as mentioned above).

| \# | TEAM | $\mathbf{M P}$ | $\mathbf{G P}$ | Adj <br> $\mathbf{M P}$ | Adj <br> $\mathbf{G P}$ | $\mathbf{R 1}$ | $\mathbf{R 2}$ | $\mathbf{R 3}$ | $\mathbf{R 4}$ | $\mathbf{R 5}$ | $\mathbf{R 6}$ | $\mathbf{R 7}$ | BH-C1 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | 10 | 17,5 | 7 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 57 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16,0 | 10 | 16,0 | 5 | 10 | 6 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 53 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18,0 | 10 | 18,0 | 2 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 53 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 5 | 52 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 4 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 52 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 7 | 12,5 | 6 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 2 | 39 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15,0 | 7 | 15,0 | 10 | 7 | 7 | 2 | 5 | 6 | 4 | 39 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 6 | 14,5 | 10 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 7 | 10 | 48 |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 6 | 11,5 | 7 | 4 | 10 | 4 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 48 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 7 | 13,5 | 4 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 | 38 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13,0 | 5 | 13,0 | 10 | 4 | 2 | 7 | 7 | 4 | 10 | 42 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 10 | 5 | 4 | 6 | 7 | 2 | 7 | 39 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 7 | 6 | 4 | 6 | 4 | 5 | 4 | 32 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 2 | 7,5 | 10 | 6 | 5 | 7 | 2 | 4 | 7 | 39 |

We should observe that the cut value due to voluntary absences is often greater than the least significant value, and that is correct. Rule [16.5] is designed to prevent a competitor from gaining an advantage by choosing a voluntary absence rather than playing the match.

## Exercise 37

Using game points (GP) as primary score, compile the final standings of the tournament using Buchholz system Cut-1.

The only practical difference from the previous examples is the use of a different score. So, this time we start from the table reordered for decreasing GP and enter the GP scores (adjusted) of the opposing teams for each round.

| $\#$ | Team | $\mathbf{M P}$ | $\mathbf{G P}$ | Adj <br> $\mathbf{M P}$ | Adj <br> $\mathbf{G P}$ | $\mathbf{R 1}$ | $\mathbf{R 2}$ | $\mathbf{R 3}$ | $\mathbf{R 4}$ | $\mathbf{R 5}$ | $\mathbf{R 6}$ | $\mathbf{R 7}$ | $\mathbf{B H}$ <br> $\mathbf{G P}$ | BH- <br> $\mathbf{C 1}$ |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | 10 | 17,5 | 15,0 | 17,0 | 13,5 | 17,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 16,0 | 114,0 | 100,5 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16,0 | 10 | 16,0 | 13,0 | 17,0 | 14,5 | 12,5 | 17,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 109,5 | 97,0 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 14,5 | 16,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 13,0 | 107,5 | 96,0 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17,0 | 10 | 17,0 | 11,5 | 17,5 | 11,5 | 18,0 | 16,0 | 17,0 | 14,5 | 106,0 | 94,5 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18,0 | 10 | 18,0 | 7,5 | 12,5 | 17,0 | 17,0 | 17,5 | 16,0 | 11,5 | 99,0 | 91,5 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15,0 | 7 | 15,0 | 17,5 | 13,5 | 12,5 | 7,5 | 13,0 | 14,5 | 11,5 | 90,0 | 82,5 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 7 | 12,5 | 11,5 | 18,0 | 15,0 | 16,0 | 11,5 | 12,5 | 7,5 | 92,0 | 79,5 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 6 | 14,5 | 17,0 | 7,5 | 16,0 | 11,5 | 13,5 | 15,0 | 17,0 | 97,5 | 90,0 |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 6 | 11,5 | 12,5 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 13,5 | 18,0 | 101,0 | 89,5 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 7 | 13,5 | 11,5 | 15,0 | 17,5 | 13,0 | 14,5 | 11,5 | 11,5 | 94,5 | 83,0 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13,0 | 5 | 13,0 | 16,0 | 11,5 | 7,5 | 13,5 | 15,0 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 92,0 | 84,5 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 13,0 | 11,5 | 11,5 | 12,5 | 7,5 | 15,0 | 88,0 | 80,5 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 4 | 11,5 | 13,5 | 11,5 | 11,5 | 14,5 | 11,5 | 13,0 | 11,5 | 87,0 | 75,5 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 2 | 7,5 | 18,0 | 14,5 | 13,0 | 15,0 | 7,5 | 11,5 | 12,5 | 92,0 | 84,5 |

## 10 Extended Sonneborn-Berger system for teams (ESB)

The extended Sonneborn-Berger system for teams (ESB) is calculated by summing, for each team, the product of the total score of each opponent (at the end of the tournament) by the score obtained by the team itself against that opponent. Since there are two different scoring systems (MP or GP), there are four possible combinations, depending on the choice of the score to use for the competing team and the opponents. The table below summarizes the possibilities.

|  |  | Opponent score |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | MP | GP |
| O | $\stackrel{\square}{\Sigma}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EMMSB } \\ \text { Opponent MP } \times \text { MP obtained } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EGMSB } \\ \text { Opponent GP } \times \text { MP obtained } \end{gathered}$ |
|  | $\bigcirc$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EMGSB } \\ \text { Opponent MP } \times \text { GP obtained } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EGGSB } \\ \text { Opponent GP } \times \text { GP obtained } \end{gathered}$ |

We can use any of these, or any combination. The ESB can be subject to "Cut" modifiers (notably, Cut-1). On the contrary, "Median" type modifiers do not apply because this tiebreak, by its nature, aims to give more importance to results scored against stronger opponents, so it wouldn't make sense to ignore just them.
The ESB tie-break can be used with either round-robin or Swiss-system tournaments. In the latter case, unplayed games and matches, just as in the case of SB for individual tournaments, are given different values based on the type of absence [16].

We will see presently several examples of application in the Swiss tournament; everything shown can be directly extended to round-robin, except for the handling of unplayed matches or games, which in the latter case are treated just as if they had been played.

## Exercise 38

Primary score is MP. Calculate EMMSB-Cut 1 for all teams at 10 points.
Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the five tied teams.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 171/2 | 8w21/2 | 4b11⁄2 | 7w3 | 2b21⁄2 | 5w11/2 | +F | 3b21⁄2 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11⁄2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 2^{1 / 2}$ | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b2½ | 4w3 | 5b31⁄2 | $1 \mathrm{w} 111 / 2$ |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 11b3 | 1w21⁄2 | 13b3 | 5w3½ | 3b1 | 2w11/2 | 9b21/2 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | $4 b^{1 / 2}$ | 1b21⁄2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b3½ |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 121/2 | 13b2 | 5w1 | 8b3 | $3 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11b21⁄2 | -F | 12w2½ |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 111/2 | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | 10w2½ | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | 1b1½ | 7w2 | 6w1 | 12b3½ | 10b2 | 9w2 | 11w3 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 141/2 | 2w1 | 12b4 | 3b1 | 14w3 | 7w2 | 8b2 | 4w11⁄2 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13 | 3b11/2 | 11w11/2 | 12b21⁄2 | 7b1½ | 8w2 | 14b3 | 2w1 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 111/2 | 4w1 | 10b21⁄2 | 14w2 | 13b1½ | 6w11/2 | 12w2 | 8b1 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | $71 / 2$ | 5b0 | 9w0 | $10 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | $8 W^{1 / 2}$ | PAB | 11 b 2 | 6b11⁄2 |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 6w2 | $14 \mathrm{~b} 2^{1 / 2}$ | 4w1 | $11 w 21 / 2$ | 2b1 | 7b2 | 5w¹/2 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 7b2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11b2 | 9b1 | HPB | 10w1 | PAB |

For the calculation, we need the MP scores of the teams involved and their opponents, and it is recommended to first gather all the necessary data. In the table below, the first row shows the "team's card", inferred from the crosstable. The second row lists the MP scores obtained by the team against each opponent, already adjusted for any unplayed matches (as seen in previous exercises, this adjustment concerns only the matches with team \#7, because all other voluntary absences are followed by rounds with availability to play, see [16.3]). The third row, on the other hand, shows the MP (total) scores of opponents faced (real or dummy). Finally, the fourth row shows the products between the score obtained against the opposing team and the score of the latter - these are the contributions that, when summed together, and excluding the one corresponding to the least significant value, finally give the value of the tie-break. Here, the contribution to be discarded, which is not the smallest but that related to the least significant opponent (i.e., the one with the lower score), is highlighted (light red background). Finally, the last column shows the values of the total tie-break (above) and the Cut-1 tie-break, obtained by discarding the least significant value (opponent). All of this is, of course, repeated for each team to untie.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { MP } \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | $\begin{gathered} \text { EMMSB } \\ \text { Cut-1 } \end{gathered}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | $171 / 2$ | 10 | 171/2 | 8w21/2 | 4b11/2 | 7w3 | 2b21/2 | 5w11/2 | +F | 3b21/2 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 88 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 7 | 10 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 74 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 14 | 0 | 14 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 20 |  |

Firstly, let's note the adjusted score attributed to the opponent \#7 (R3), which asked for a ZPB in the last round. Also, observe that team \#1 has an unplayed match in the sixth round, to be counted at face value [16.4].

Team \#1 had two opponents (\#7 and \#8) with the same minimum score. We should exclude the one against which the team obtained the worst result, but in this case, those are equal too. Therefore, we can choose either one of the two. The total value of the EMMSB tie-break is determined by:
EMMSB $=2 \times 7+0 \times 10+2 \times 7+2 \times 10+0 \times 10+2 \times 10+2 \times 10=14+0+14+20+0+20+20=88$
Discarding the contribute corresponding to the least significant value (i.e., that of team \#7 or \#8), we have:

EMMSB-C1 $=0 \times 10+2 \times 7+2 \times 10+0 \times 10+2 \times 10+2 \times 10=14+0+14+20+0+20+20=74$
Once again, let's focus our attention on this point - as clearly seen in this case, the contribute related to the least significant value in general is not the smaller one.

Results for other teams are calculated in the very same way. The calculations are left as an exercise for the reader.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|l\|} \hline \text { MP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMMSB Cut-1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11⁄2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 74 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 5 | 64 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 12 | 20 | 0 | 0 | 12 | 20 | 10 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMMSB Cut-1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | 10 | 16 | 10w2 $1 / 2$ | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b21/2 | 4w3 | 5b31/2 | 1w11/2 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 76 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 5 | 10 | 6 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 66 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 10 | 0 | 12 | 14 | 20 | 20 | 0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMMSB <br> Cut-1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 11b3 | 1W21/2 | 13 b 3 | 5w31/2 | 3b1 | 2w11/2 | 9b21/2 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 72 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 4 | 10 | 6 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 64 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 8 | 20 | 12 | 20 | 0 | 0 | 12 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMMSB Cut-1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 10 | 18 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | 4b1/2 | 1b21/2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b31/2 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 70 |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 7 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 6 | 66 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 4 | 14 | 20 | 0 | 20 | 0 | 12 |  |

In the end, teams \#3 and \#5, still tied, share the second and third place, while teams \#2 and \#4 share the fourth and fifth place (incidentally, the SB total tie-break would not have left unresolved ties, but this is just a lucky coincidence).

## Exercise 39

Primary score is MP. Calculate EGMSB for all teams at 10 points.
Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need MP scores of the involved teams and the GP scores of their opponents. Numbers are now different (GP score is typically greater than MP) but the calculation method is identical to that seen in the previous exercise.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | Adj <br> GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGMSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 171/2 | 10 | 171/2 | 8w21/2 | 4b11/2 | 7w3 | 2b21/2 | 5w11/2 | +F | 3b21/2 |  |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 0 |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 15,0 | 17,0 | 13,5 | 17,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 16,0 | 158,0 |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 30,0 | 0,0 | 27,0 | 34,0 | 0,0 | 35,0 | 32,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { MP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { GP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGMSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11/2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 | 144,0 |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 2 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 14,5 | 16,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 | 11,5 | 17,0 | 13,0 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 29,0 | 32,0 | 0,0 | 0,0 | 23,0 | 34,0 | 26,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { MP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | Adj GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGMSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b21/2 | 4w3 | 5b31⁄2 | 1w11/2 | 150,0 |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 0 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 13,0 | 17,0 | 14,5 | 12,5 | 17,0 | 18,0 | 17,5 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 26,0 | 0,0 | 29,0 | 25,0 | 34,0 | 36,0 | 0,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | Adj <br> GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGMSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 11b3 | 1w21/2 | 13b3 | 5w31/2 | 3b1 | 2w11/2 | 9b21/2 | 146,0 |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 0 | 2 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 11,5 | 17,5 | 11,5 | 18,0 | 16,0 | 17,0 | 14,5 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 23,0 | 35,0 | 23,0 | 36,0 | 0,0 | 0,0 | 29,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { MP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGMSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 10 | 18 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | $4 b^{1 / 2}$ | 1b21/2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b31/2 | 132,0 |
|  | Team MP |  |  |  |  | 2 | 2 | 2 | 0 | 2 | 0 | 2 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 7,5 | 12,5 | 17,0 | 17,0 | 17,5 | 16,0 | 11,5 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 15,0 | 25,0 | 34,0 | 0,0 | 35,0 | 0,0 | 23,0 |  |

Now there are no more tied teams - this makes sense because the values of GP scores are more varied, and therefore different results have greater probability. We also want to observe that the least significant contributions are not the same as in the previous case.

## Exercise 40

## Primary score is MP. Calculate EMGSB for all teams at 6 points.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need GP scores of the involved teams and the MP scores of their opponents. Once again, the calculation method is identical to that seen in the previous exercise.

The case of team \#7 highlights that, in the Sonneborn-Berger system, there is no need for special considerations for forfeit losses and zero-point byes (pre-announced absences), as their contribution is always null. However, it remains necessary to consider the half-point byes, which fall under the category of voluntary absences but provide a non-zero contribution. (These may need to be discarded when applying the Cut-1 modifier.)

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | Adj <br> GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMGSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 7 | $131 / 2$ | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB | 68,5 |
|  | Team GP |  |  |  |  | 2,0 | 2,0 | 1,0 | 2,5 | 2,0 | 2,0 | 0,0 |  |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 4 | 7 | 10 | 5 | 6 | 6 | 6 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 8,0 | 14,0 | 10,0 | 12,5 | 12,0 | 12,0 | 0,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { MP } \\ \hline \end{array}$ | $\begin{array}{\|l\|} \hline \text { Adj } \\ \text { GP } \end{array}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMGSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 141/2 | 6 | 141/2 | 2w1 | 12b4 | 3b1 | 14w3 | 7w2 | 8b2 | 4w11/2 | 83,0 |
|  | Team GP |  |  |  |  | 1,0 | 4,0 | 1,0 | 3,0 | 2,0 | 2,0 | 1,5 |  |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 10 | 2 | 10 | 4 | 7 | 7 | 10 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 10,0 | 8,0 | 10,0 | 12,0 | 14,0 | 14,0 | 15,0 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EMGSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 111/2 | 6 | 111/2 | 6w2 | 14b2 $1 / 2$ | 4w1 | $11 \mathrm{~W} 2^{1 / 2}$ | 2b1 | 7b2 | 5w $1 / 2$ | 73,0 |
|  | Team GP |  |  |  |  | 2,0 | 2,5 | 1,0 | 2,5 | 1,0 | 2,0 | 0,5 |  |
|  | Opponent MP |  |  |  |  | 7 | 4 | 10 | 4 | 10 | 7 | 10 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 14,0 | 10,0 | 10,0 | 10,0 | 10,0 | 14,0 | 5,0 |  |

Since in this tie-break the contribute of an opponent is given by its total MP score multiplied by the GP score obtained against it, two teams that have won (or lost) against the same opponent may have a different contribution based on how well they won (or how poorly they lost). For example, teams \#9 and \#13 both played and won against team \#14, but team \#9 won with a 3-1 score, so the contribution it gets from this match is $3 \times 4=12$ points, while team $\# 13$ won with a $21 / 2-1 \frac{1}{2}$ score, resulting in a contribution of $2.5 \times 4=10$ points. It may happen that this opponent giving different contributes to the two teams is just the one giving the least significant contribute. In this case, when applying the Cut-1 modifier, we are cutting contributes that are not all equal (in contrast to what happened in the previous examples, for instance, with the EMMSB variant). The application of the Cut-1 modifier may therefore have different effects for the two (or possibly more) teams that faced a same "least significant" opponent.

Incidentally, it is also worth noting that here the score used for the team in calculating the tie-break is the secondary score and not the primary one. Although this may seem "strange" at first glance, there is in fact no drawback to doing so.

## Exercise 41

Primary score is MP. Calculate EGGSB for all teams at 7 points. Resolve residual ties using the EGGSB-Cut 1 system.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data relevant to the tied teams (see previous examples). For this calculation, we need GP scores of the involved teams and of their
opponents. Once again, the calculation method is always the same.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | Adj GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGGSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | $121 / 2$ | 7 | $121 / 2$ | 13b2 | 5w1 | 8b3 | 3w11/2 | 11b2 ${ }^{1 / 2}$ | -F | 12w ${ }^{1 / 1 / 2}$ | 157,50 |
|  | Team GP |  |  |  |  | 2,0 | 1,0 | 3,0 | 1,5 | 2,5 | 0,0 | 2,5 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 11,5 | 18,0 | 15,0 | 16,0 | 11,5 | 12,5 | 7,5 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 23,00 | 18,00 | 45,00 | 24,00 | 28,75 | 0,00 | 18,75 |  |


| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | EGGSB |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | 7 | 15 | 1b11/2 | 7w2 | 6w1 | 12b31/2 | 10b2 | 9w2 | 11w3 | 181,50 |
|  | Team GP |  |  |  |  | 1,5 | 2,0 | 1,0 | 3,5 | 2,0 | 2,0 | 3,0 |  |
|  | Opponent GP |  |  |  |  | 17,5 | 13,5 | 12,5 | 7,5 | 13,0 | 14,5 | 11,5 |  |
|  | ESB Contribute |  |  |  |  | 26,25 | 27,00 | 12,50 | 26,25 | 26,00 | 29,00 | 34,50 |  |

The possible values for this tie-break are highly varied, making differences very probable. Among the four variants of the ESB system, this is the one that provides the best resolution of the ranking (although this doesn't necessarily imply the highest reliability). It's worth noting that the numbers are large (because a result expressed in GP is numerically larger) and, to represent them correctly, two decimal places are necessary.

### 10.1 The Olympiad tie-break

The tie-break regulations ([16.6]) explicitly allow the competition rules to provide for a different treatment of unplayed matches. This happens, for example, in the Olympics. Let's take, for instance, the main tie-break indicated for the 2026 edition. Examining the regulations (see FIDE Handbook, D.02.01, Appendix 2), we see that this tie-break is rather similar to the Sonneborn-Berger, EMGSB Cut-1 variant.

However, in addition to the slightly different definition of unplayed rounds, the cutting procedure here is different: the preferred choice is the round in which the team received the PAB. Only if the team did not receive a PAB, the contribution from the opponent with the lowest match points score is excluded.

```
*****
```

To conclude the chapter, the reader is encouraged to practice calculating other tie-breaks. To help the reader to verify their results, the following table reports the tie-break values calculated with each of the four variants.

| \# | Squadra | MP | GP | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Adj } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | Adj GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 | $\begin{gathered} \text { EMM } \\ \text { SB } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EGM } \\ \text { SB } \\ \hline \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { EMG } \\ \text { SB } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{gathered} \hline \text { EGG } \\ \text { SB } \end{gathered}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 171/2 | 10 | 171/2 | 8w21/2 | 4b1112 | 7w3 | 2b21/2 | 5w11/2 | +F | 3b21/2 | 88 | 158,0 | 158,5 | 283,00 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 9b3 | 3w4 | 5b0 | 1w11/2 | 13w3 | 4b21/2 | 10b3 | 74 | 144,0 | 131,0 | 249,75 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 2^{1 / 2}$ | 2b0 | 9w3 | 6b21/2 | 4w3 | 5b31122 | 1w11/2 | 76 | 150,0 | 128,0 | 247,50 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 11b3 | 1w21/2 | 13b3 | 5w31/2 | 3b1 | 2w11/2 | 9b21/2 | 72 | 146,0 | 130,0 | 253,50 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 10 | 18 | 12w4 | 6b3 | 2w4 | 4b1/2 | 1b21/2 | $3 w^{1 / 2}$ | 13b31/2 | 70 | 132,0 | 125,0 | 236,00 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 121/2 | 7 | 121/2 | 13b2 | 5w1 | 8b3 | 3w11/2 | 11b21/2 | -F | $12 \mathrm{w} 2^{1 ⁄ 2}$ | 32 | 79,5 | 73,0 | 157,50 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 7 | 131/2 | 14w2 | 8b2 | 1b1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 9b2 | 13w2 | ZPB | 33 | 78,5 | 68,5 | 155,00 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | 7 | 15 | 1b11/2 | 7w2 | 6w1 | $12 \mathrm{~b} 31 / 2$ | 10b2 | 9w2 | 11w3 | 30 | 79,0 | 77,0 | 181,50 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | $141 / 2$ | 6 | 141/2 | 2w1 | 12b4 | 3b1 | 14w3 | 7w2 | 8b2 | 4w11/2 | 26 | 66,5 | 83,0 | 180,00 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13 | 5 | 13 | 3b11/2 | 11w11⁄2 | $12 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 7b1112 | 8w2 | 14b3 | 2w1 | 19 | 53,0 | 72,5 | 161,75 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 4w1 | 10b21/2 | 14w2 | 13b11⁄2 | 6w11/2 | 12w2 | 8b1 | 16 | 45,0 | 61,0 | 138,50 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7112 | 2 | 71122 | 5b0 | 9w0 | $10 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 8w1/2 | PAB | 11b2 | 6b11122 | 6 | 19,0 | 33,5 | 83,75 |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 111/2 | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 6w2 | 14b21/2 | 4w1 | $11 w{ }^{1 ⁄ 2} 2$ | 2b1 | 7b2 | 5w1/2 | 30 | 72,0 | 73,0 | 152,50 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 111/2 | 4 | 111/2 | 7b2 | 13w11⁄2 | 11b2 | 9b1 | HPB | 10w1 | PAB | 19 | 48,0 | 58,0 | 140,75 |

## 11 ExTENDED DIRECT ENCOUNTER FOR TEAMS (EDE)

The direct encounter tie-break for team tournaments [13.3] is rather complex, but it takes into account that some of the involved teams may not have faced each other. Additionally, it considers the possibility of using the secondary score when the primary score fails to resolve all ties. This tie-break is currently the only one that can appear multiple times in the list of tie-breaks [4.1]. For example, we could have the list \{EDE, EGMSB, EDE\}, where the remaining ties after the first application of direct encounter are resolved using Sonneborn-Berger, and any further remaining ties are again resolved using EDE.

In Swiss-system tournaments, unplayed matches are all ignored. On the contrary, in tournaments with predetermined pairings (round-robin, Scheveningen, Schiller, etc.), forfeits are treated just as played matches [15.2] - although tournament rules may still establish different behaviours.

The direct encounter tie-break is applied in multiple, possibly repeated, phases, as illustrated below.

1. First, a separate crosstable is created with only the matches between the tied teams, excluding those involving teams with different scores.
2. From this, a ranking is prepared for the relevant teams only ("separate ranking"), using the primary score.

In Swiss-system tournaments, some teams may not have faced each other, resulting in gaps in the separate crosstable. In certain cases, a team might inevitably rank first, regardless of any possible outcomes of the missing matches. In this case, the team is indeed ranked first, and we proceed to check if the same holds for a possible second place (and so on).
3. If all teams are still tied, the entire process is repeated using the secondary score instead of the primary one.
a. If exactly two teams remain tied, the tournament rules may specify the application of one or more tie-breaks specific to direct elimination tournaments [12] (which are generally suitable for team tournaments as well).
4. If more than two teams remain tied, a new separate crosstable is compiled with only the teams still tied, and the process starts anew.

The outlined procedure shows how the direct encounter tie-break can be applied multiple times to progressively smaller groups of tied teams - until no further ties can be resolved, and the next tie-break is invoked.

## Exercise 42

Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 4 points using the EDE system.
First things first, we need to extract the data of the involved teams from the crosstable.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 4 w 1 | $10 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 14 w 2 | $13 \mathrm{~b} 11 / 2$ | $6 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 12 w 2 | 8 b 1 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 7 b 2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11 b 2 | 9 b 1 | HPB | 10 w 1 | PAB |

Since there are only two teams involved, this once only there is no need to physically compile a separate crosstable. The results show that the two teams played with each other and drew, remaining tied. Therefore, we must compare the secondary score, but it is also equal. Hence, we should move on to the next tie-break.

## Exercise 43

## Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 7 points using the EDE system.

Let's start by extracting the data for the involved teams from the general crosstable.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | $121 / 2$ | 13 b 2 | 5 w 1 | 8 b 3 | $3 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | $11 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | -F | $12 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15 | $1 \mathrm{~b} 11 / 2$ | 7 w 2 | 6 w 1 | $12 \mathrm{~b} 31 / 2$ | 10 b 2 | 9 w 2 | 11 w 3 |

Once again, there are only two teams involved. Now, however, the teams played each other and team \#6 won - hence, it precedes team \#8 in the standings. Incidentally, we observe that a tie-break system based on secondary score, like MPvGP or some variants of Sonneborn-Berger (EMGSB, EGGSB) would yield the opposite result.

## Exercise 44

## Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 6 points using the EDE system.

Again, let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the involved teams.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 14 w 2 | 8 b 2 | 1 b 1 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 9 b 2 | 13 w 2 | ZPB |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | $141 / 2$ | 2 w 1 | 12 b 4 | 3 b 1 | 14 w 3 | 7 w 2 | 8 b 2 | $4 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | $111 / 2$ | 6 w 2 | $14 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 4 w 1 | $11 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 2 b 1 | 7 b 2 | $5 \mathrm{w} 1 / 2$ |

In this case, it is advisable to explicitly compile the separate crosstable (on the right - game points (GP) obtained in the match are reported). The ranking, formulated based on the primary score (MP), sees \#7 with two (MP) points, while \#9 and \#13 are tied at

|  | 7 | 9 | 13 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 7 | $*$ | B2 | W2 |
| 9 | W2 | $*$ | - |
| 13 | B2 | - | $*$ | one point, but they have not played against each other. Therefore, we need to consider the possible outcomes of this match. For example, if \#9 had won, it would move to three points, surpassing team \#7. So, nothing can be said about this ranking. If everyone remains tied, we must move on to the alternative score (GP) - but even in this case, nothing changes. In conclusion, once again EDE cannot determine the ranking order.

## Exercise 45

Primary score is MP. Rank all teams at 10 points using the EDE system.
Again, let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the five involved teams.

| \# | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | $171 / 2$ | $8 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | $4 \mathrm{~b} 11 / 2$ | 7 w 3 | $2 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | $5 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | +F | $3 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 9 b 3 | 3 w 4 | 5 b 0 | $1 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 13 w 3 | $4 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 10 b 3 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | $10 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 2 b 0 | 9 w 3 | $6 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 4 w 3 | $5 \mathrm{~b} 31 / 2$ | $1 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 11 b 3 | $1 \mathrm{w} 21 / 2$ | 13 b 3 | $5 \mathrm{w} 31 / 2$ | 3 b 1 | $2 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | $9 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 12 w 4 | 6 b 3 | 2 w 4 | $4 \mathrm{~b} 1 / 2$ | $1 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | $3 \mathrm{w} 1 / 2$ | $13 \mathrm{~b} 31 / 2$ |

All teams played each other (this does not happen often...) so we can compile a complete separate crosstable.

This case is a bit more complicated, so we'll follow the procedure step by step. First, with the data from the general crosstable, we compose the separate crosstable (on the right) and calculate the MP scores of the teams.

|  | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathbf{M P}$ | $\mathbf{G P}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | $\boldsymbol{*}$ | $\mathrm{B} 21 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~B} 21 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~B} 11 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{8 , 0}$ |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | $*$ | W 4 | $\mathrm{~B} 21 / 2$ | B 0 | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{8 , 0}$ |
| $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | B 0 | $*$ | W 3 | $\mathrm{~B} 31 / 2$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{8 , 0}$ |
| $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathrm{~W} 21 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | B 1 | $*$ | $\mathrm{~W} 31 / 2$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{8 , 5}$ |
| $\mathbf{5}$ | $\mathrm{~B} 21 / 2$ | W 4 | $\mathrm{~W} 1 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~B} 1 / 2$ | $*$ | $\mathbf{4}$ | $\mathbf{7 , 5}$ | Since these are all the same, the teams are still all tied and we must therefore try again, this time using the GP scores [13.3.1]. Doing so, we succeed in assigning the first place to team \#4 and the fifth to \#5, while the other three teams remain still tied.

We must therefore apply again the direct encounter, to the three remaining teams only, still using the GP because we are still within the same application of the tie-break, as indicated by [6], endnote. This time the

|  | $\mathbf{1}$ | $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathbf{G P}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | $*$ | $\mathrm{~B} 21 / 2$ | $\mathrm{~B} 21 / 2$ | $\mathbf{5 , 0}$ |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | $*$ | W 4 | $\mathbf{5 , 5}$ |
| $\mathbf{3}$ | $\mathrm{~W} 11 / 2$ | B 0 | $*$ | $\mathbf{1 , 5}$ | scores are different, so they can determine the three positions in the ranking.

We thus arrive at the final ranking (on the right). It's worth taking a moment to consider the resulting ranking in light of the total scores obtained by the teams. In fact, a typical aspect of the direct encounter tie-break becomes evident here - team \#2 is positioned ahead of team \#1, despite having a lower GP score. Furthermore, the

|  | Crosstable |  | EDE |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | MP | GP | MP 1 | GP 2 | GP 3 |
| $\mathbf{4}$ | 10 | 17 | 4 | 8,5 | --- |
| $\mathbf{2}$ | 10 | 17 | 4 | 8,0 | 5,5 |
| $\mathbf{1}$ | 10 | $171 / 2$ | 4 | 8,0 | 5,0 |
| $\mathbf{3}$ | 10 | 16 | 4 | 8,0 | 1,5 |
| $\mathbf{5}$ | 10 | 18 | 4 | 7,5 | -- | team with the highest GP score even ranks last, after the team with the lowest GP score!

The above examples suggest that the direct encounter can rarely differentiate between tied positions. However, there is a widespread (although debatable) sentiment that it is a "fair" tie-break because it favours the team who defeated the others. As with all tiebreaks, the matter is philosophical, and it is always up to the tournament organizer to decide which tie-break strategy they consider better (and for the players to approve or disapprove, by participating or not in the tournament). We conclude, as usual, with a comparison between podium positions obtained by using various tie-break systems.

| TEAM |  | PUNTEGGI |  |  |  | SONNEBORN-BERGER |  |  |  |  | BUCHHOLZ |  |  |  |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \# | Team | MP | GP | Adj <br> MP | Adj <br> GP | EMM | EGM | EMG | EGG | BH <br> MP | $\mathbf{C 1}$ | BH <br> GP | C1 | EDE |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | $171 / 2$ | 10 | $171 / 2$ | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 2 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | 10 | 16 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 4 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 10 | 17 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 1 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 10 | 18 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 5 |

## 12 Systems based on boards count

The tie-breaks in this group are meant to be used in team knockout tournaments, when the tied teams have equal match and game scores. Individual forfeits are considered equivalent to actually played matches, and PABs (Pairing Allocated Byes) provide the same points as a regular win. The rules of an event may specify the use of one or more of these tie-breaks in any team tournament. Additionally, they may indicate their use in association with extended direct encounter tie-breaks when only two teams remain tied.

To apply these tie-breaks, knowledge of the player line-ups in the teams is necessary. Such information that does not appear in the crosstable and must be obtained from other sources (e.g., detailed pairings).

### 12.1 Board count (BC)

The board count is an example of score weighted according to the board position. The contribution of each board is given by the product of the result achieved on that board (regardless of the player) multiplied by the number of the board itself. The value of the tie-break is the sum of all these contributions (which usually are four).

To illustrate the behaviour of this tie-break, the following table shows the value of BC for each possible result of a team (of four players) that achieved a draw ( $1 \mathrm{MP}, 2 \mathrm{GP}$ ).

| B1 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0,5 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 0 | 0,5 | 1 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 | 0,5 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B2 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 1 | 0,5 | 0 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 |
| B3 | 1 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 1 | 0,5 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 0 |
| B4 | 1 | 1 | 0,5 | 1 | 1 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 1 | 0 | 0,5 | 0,5 | 0 | 0 | 0,5 | 0 | 0 |
| BC | 7,0 | 6,5 | 6,0 | 6,0 | 6,0 | 5,5 | 5,5 | 5,5 | 5,0 | 5,0 | 5,0 | 4,5 | 4,5 | 4,5 | 4,0 | 4,0 | 4,0 | 3,5 | 3,0 |

It is readily apparent that the result is lower the higher the boards on which the result was achieved. Since the underlying idea of this tie-break is to give more importance to the first board, decreasing gradually towards the last, it follows that the lower the total, the better the placement.

The same BC value can be obtained with different scores (for example, a BC value of 5 can correspond to a match lost, drawn, or won) - hence:

## Exercise 46

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with board count [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams \#11 and \#14.

Let's extract from the general crosstable the data for the involved teams.

| $\#$ | TEAM | MP | GP | R1 | R2 | R3 | R4 | R5 | R6 | R7 |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 4 w 1 | $10 \mathrm{~b} 21 / 2$ | 14 w 2 | $13 \mathrm{~b} 11 / 2$ | $6 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 12 w 2 | 8 b 1 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | $111 / 2$ | 7 b 2 | $13 \mathrm{w} 11 / 2$ | 11 b 2 | 9 b 1 | HPB | 10 w 1 | PAB |

In the direct encounter match, which occurred in the third round, the teams drew, and the application of [13.3.1], first with MP and then with GP, leaves the teams still tied. We are thus in the scenario described by [13.3.2], and the tournament rules specify the application of BC. We need the line-ups of the two teams in the match, which we can derive from the pairing:

| Table | id | team | result | team | id |
| :---: | :--- | :--- | :---: | ---: | :---: |
| 5 | 11 | Koalas | $2-2$ | Narwhals | 14 |
| Board | id | player | result | player | id |
| 1 | 33 | Kris Kelpa | $1-0$ | Nikola Neric | 34 |
| 2 | 43 | Kelly Kort | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Noah Negus | 55 |
| 3 | 52 | Kirk Koman | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Nicola Neba | 37 |
| 4 | 73 | Kurt Kontos | $0-1$ | Nuccio Negri | 62 |

Now we can calculate the tie-break values.
$B C(\# 11)=1 \times \mathbf{1}+0,5 \times \mathbf{2}+0,5 \times \mathbf{3}+0 \times \mathbf{4}=1+1+1,5+0=3,5$
$B C(\# 14)=0 \times \mathbf{1}+0,5 \times \mathbf{2}+0,5 \times \mathbf{3}+1 \times \mathbf{4}=0+1+1,5+4=6,5$
Finally, we compare the results to establish that the value for team \#14 is higher, determining the precedence of team \#11.

Incidentally, in this particular case, using the principle of giving more importance to the higher boards, one could have predicted the tie-break outcome simply by observing the results. However, a careful examination of the table shown at the beginning of the paragraph reveals that things are not always so straightforward.

### 12.2 Top board results (TBR)

This tie-break considers the results obtained on the higher boards (in only actually played games, regardless of the player), starting from the first board alone and then gradually extending to the lower ones until the tie is resolved. This tie-break can also be considered a kind of weighted average of scores per board, where the weights are progressively adjusted in case of persistent ties.

## Exercise 47

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with top board results [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams \#11 and \#14.

As seen in the previous example, the teams drew, and the application of [13.3.1] leaves them tied, so we move on to [13.3.2], where this time the TBR is applied. The formations of the two teams are needed again, which we report below.

| Table | id | team | result | team | id |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | ---: | :---: |
| 5 | 11 | Koalas | $2-2$ | Narwhals | 14 |
| Board | id | player | result | player | id |
| 1 | 33 | Kris Kelpa | $1-0$ | Nikola Neric | 34 |
| 2 | 43 | Kelly Kort | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Noah Negus | 55 |
| 3 | 52 | Kirk Koman | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Nicola Neba | 37 |
| 4 | 73 | Kurt Kontos | $0-1$ | Nuccio Negri | 62 |

There is nothing to calculate since the application is immediate. On the first board, team \#11 won, thus prevailing over the opponent. It's worth noting that this tie-break, although different from the previous one, has similar practical effects.

### 12.3 Bottom board elimination (BBE)

This tie-break is, in a sense, complementary to the previous one. If before we considered the top boards, now we progressively eliminate the last ones. This shifts the focus from the (usually) stronger players of the team to the (usually) weaker ones. Both tie-breaks favour the results of the higher boards, thus giving better results for teams whose players are lined up in order of playing strength.

## Exercise 48

Primary score is MP. The first criterion in the tie-break list is EDE system with bottom board elimination [13.3.2]. Establish the ranking order of teams \#11 and \#14.

As mentioned above, applying [13.3.1] leaves those teams still tied and we must resort to [13.3.2], where BBE is used. Once again, we need lineups.

| Table | id | team | result | team | id |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :---: | ---: | :---: |
| 5 | 11 | Koalas | $2-2$ | Narwhals | 14 |
| Board | id | player | result | player | id |
| 1 | 33 | Kris Kelpa | $1-0$ | Nikola Neric | 34 |
| 2 | 43 | Kelly Kort | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Noah Negus | 55 |
| 3 | 52 | Kirk Koman | $1 / 2-1 / 2$ | Nicola Neba | 37 |
| 4 | 73 | Kurt Kontos | $0-1$ | Nuccio Negri | 62 |

The application is straightforward.
$\operatorname{BBE}(\# 11)=1+0,5+0,5=2$
BBE (\#14) $=0+0,5+0,5=1$
Once again, team \#11 prevail over the opponent.

## 13 Scores and schedule strengit combination (SSSC)

This is a somewhat intricate tie-break that considers both the team's secondary score and the strength of the encountered opposition at the same time, providing an estimate of the team's actual playing strength. However, calculating it is not too difficult, requiring in practice only a few more operations than the Buchholz, on which it partly relies.

The tie-break value is the sum of two elements. The first is simply the team's secondary score (GP if the primary score is MP, or vice versa), representing the overall results.

The second term, which assesses the strength of the opposition, uses the Buchholz system calculated based on the primary score. However, the Buchholz value can be numerically much greater than the secondary score and therefore, in order to balance the two terms, it needs to be normalized. This is achieved by dividing it by a normalisation factor, which essentially accounts for the imbalance between the two. The value of this factor is the same for all teams and is calculated by dividing the maximum possible primary score (which depends on the number of rounds) by the maximum secondary score in a match (which depends on the number of players in the team) and rounding down. Tournament regulations may specify a different normalisation value.

It's worth noting that, since the Buchholz manages unplayed matches (replacing them with "dummy" matches), the SSSC system implicitly does the same.

Example 1: Let's consider a tournament with eleven rounds and teams of four members, with MP as primary score (following the Olympic format). The maximum possible team score is given by the win score (2 MP) multiplied by the number of rounds (11), resulting in 22 MP . The maximum secondary score achievable in a round is equal to the number of players per team, which is 4 . The quotient between these values is $22 / 4=5.5$. Rounding down ([13.4.2.b]) this quotient, we obtain the normalization factor $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}=5$.

Example 2: Let's consider a tournament with nine rounds and teams of four members, with GP as primary score. The maximum possible team score is given by the maximum score per match ( 4 GP ) multiplied by 9 rounds, resulting in 36 GP . The maximum secondary score achievable in a round is equal to the victory score ( 2 MP ). Therefore, the normalization factor is $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}=36 / 2=18$ (there's no need to round in this case).

## What is the meaning of the normalisation factor?

To better focus on the significance of this factor, we want to estimate the ratio between the two terms that make up the SSSC tie-break. For simplicity, let's consider the case where the primary score is MP, and conventional scoring systems are used (2-1-0 for matches, $1-1 / 2-0$ for games).
The maximum secondary score in a round, GP MAXR, is simply equal to the number $N_{G}$ of players fielded per team.
If $N_{R}$ is the number of rounds, the maximum secondary score in this tournament is therefore:
$\mathrm{GP}_{\mathrm{MAX}}=\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{R}} \times \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{G}}$

The maximum primary score, $\mathrm{MP}_{\mathrm{mAx}}$, is equal to the score $\mathrm{S}_{\mathrm{w}}$ assigned for a match win multiplied by the number $N_{R}$ of rounds:
$M_{\text {MAX }}=N_{R} \times S_{W}$
The maximum possible Buchholz, which would be obtained by facing all opponents with a perfect score, is therefore given by the maximum primary score multiplied by the number of matches:
$B H_{\text {max }}=N_{R} \times M P_{\text {max }}=N_{R} \times N_{R} \times S_{w}$.
Using these boundary values, we can estimate the ratio $R$ between the two components of the tie-break as
$\mathrm{R}=\mathrm{BH}_{\text {max }} / \mathrm{GP}_{\text {max }}=\left(\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{R}} \times \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{R}} \times \mathrm{Sw}\right) /\left(\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{R}} \times \mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{G}}\right)$, or
$R=\left(N_{R} \times S_{w}\right) / N_{G}=M_{\text {max }} / G P_{\text {MAXR }}$
Apart from rounding (imposed for simplicity), this last expression is indeed equal to the normalization factor. We can therefore attribute it a meaning as the $\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}$ factor, such that $\mathrm{GP}_{\mathrm{MAX}}=\mathrm{BH}_{\mathrm{MAX}} / \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}$. Hence, this factor makes the value of the secondary score $G P_{\text {тот }}$ comparable to that of the Buchholz.

Of course, the reasoning could be repeated with another primary score or for other scoring systems, leading to similar conclusions.

## Exercise 49

## Primary score is MP. Calculate the SSSC tie-break value for all teams.

First, we calculate the normalization factor. The tournament has seven rounds, and the match win score is two MP. Therefore, the maximum primary score achievable in the entire tournament is $S_{M P}=2 \mathrm{MP} \times 7$ rounds $=14 \mathrm{MP}$. The maximum secondary score achievable in one round is, of course, one point for each player fielded, so in our case, it is 4 GP. Dividing the former by the latter and rounding, we obtain the value of the normalization factor, which here is 3 .

| MAX PRIMARY <br> SCORE (TOTAL) | MAX SECONDARY <br> SCORE (ROUND) | QUOTIENT | NORMALISATION <br> FACTOR |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 14 | 4 | 3,5 | 3 |

Using the values already calculated for the Buchholz (see exercise 35) and this normalization factor, we can now easily calculate the tie-break for each team. As an example, let's calculate it for team \#1. The opposition is given by the Buchholz (calculated on the primary score) divided by the normalization factor: $\mathrm{OPP}_{1}=\mathrm{BH}_{1} / \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{N}}=64 / 3 \approx$ 21.3 (for our convenience, the result is rounded to one decimal place). By adding this term to the final GP score of the team, we get $\mathrm{SSSC}_{1}=\mathrm{GP}_{1}+\mathrm{OPP}_{1}=17.5+21.3=38.8$.

Proceeding similarly for the other teams, we can compile the following table.

| $\#$ | TEAM | MP <br> $(\mathbf{P R I})$ | GP <br> $\mathbf{( S E C )}$ | $\mathbf{B H}$ <br> $\mathbf{( M P )}$ | OPPOSITION | SSSC |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 17,5 | 64 | 21,3 | 38,8 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17,0 | 57 | 19,0 | 36,0 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16,0 | 58 | 19,3 | 35,3 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17,0 | 56 | 18,7 | 35,7 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18,0 | 55 | 18,3 | 36,3 |
| 6 | Falcons | 7 | 12,5 | 46 | 15,3 | 27,8 |
| 7 | Giraffes | 6 | 11,5 | 44 | 14,7 | 26,2 |
| 8 | Hippopotami | 7 | 15,0 | 41 | 13,7 | 28,7 |
| 9 | Iguanas | 6 | 14,5 | 50 | 16,7 | 31,2 |
| 10 | Jackals | 5 | 13,0 | 44 | 14,7 | 27,7 |
| 11 | Koalas | 4 | 11,5 | 41 | 13,7 | 25,2 |
| 12 | Lynxes | 2 | 7,5 | 41 | 13,7 | 21,2 |
| 13 | Moose | 6 | 11,5 | 52 | 17,3 | 28,8 |
| 14 | Narwhals | 4 | 11,5 | 36 | 12,0 | 23,5 |

Let's conclude this chapter by comparing the podium positions given by the various tiebreaks.

| TEAM |  | SCORES |  | SONNEBORN-BERGER |  |  |  | BUCHHOLZ |  |  |  | EDE | SSSC |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \# | Team | MP | GP | EMM | EGM | EMG | EGG | $\begin{aligned} & \hline \text { BH } \\ & \text { MP } \end{aligned}$ | C1 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { BH } \\ & \text { GP } \end{aligned}$ | C1 |  |  |
| 1 | Antelopes | 10 | 171/2 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 3 | 1 |
| 2 | Bonobos | 10 | 17 | 3 | 4 | 2 | 3 | 3 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 3 |
| 3 | Cougars | 10 | 16 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 4 | 5 |
| 4 | Deer | 10 | 17 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 2 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 4 | 1 | 4 |
| 5 | Elephants | 10 | 18 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 2 | 5 | 5 | 5 | 2 |

It is worth noting that SSSC rewards with the second place the high game score of team \#5, which almost all other tie-breaks would assign to the fifth place (whereas the MPvGP system would even place it in the first position). Conversely, it gives the fifth place to the relatively low score of team \#3, which other tie-breaks position at the second place.

## TABLE OF CHANGES

(not reported are simple changes to article references, created by the introduction of new articles)

## C.04.1 - BASIC RULES FOR SWISS SYSTEMS <br> C.04.3 - FIDE (DUTCH) SYSTEM

| Art. | REMOVED TEXT / NEW TEXT | Reason |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| C.04.1 - BASIC RULES FOR SWISS SYSTEMS |  |  |
| 1.d | A player who has already received a pairing-allocated bye, or has already scored in one single round, without playing, as many points as rewarded for a win , shall not receive the pairing-allocated bye. | This makes the full-point bye equivalent to a forfeit win: a player who gets a full-point bye is prevented from getting a pairing-allocated bye. |
| C.04.3 - FIDE (DUTCH) SYSTEM |  |  |
|  | Version to be presented at the 94 ${ }^{\text {rd }}$ FIDE Online Congress in 2023 87 HIDE 2016. <br> Terms and Definitions added at the $88^{\text {th }}$ FIDE Congress in Goynuk 2017. See https://spp.fide.com/fide-dutch-extras/. | The new part will be replaced after approval. <br> Pairing Guidelines For Programmers are to be reviewed after the changes. |
| A. 3 | A scoregroup is composed of (all) the players with the same score. A (pairing) bracket is a group of players to be paired. It is composed of players coming from non-empty scoregroup (called resident players) and (possibly) of players who remained unpaired after the pairing of the previous bracket. | As a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process, the special "collapsed" scoregroup has been removed from the system. <br> Same wording as in the more recently redefined Burstein System, except for the "non-empty" attribute, which is a clarification. |
| A.4.b | After two players with different scores have played each other in a round, the higher ranked player receives a downfloat, the lower one an upfloat. <br> A player who, for whatever reason, scores without playing in a round more points than those rewarded for a loss, also receives a downfloat | The main reason for considering players who forfeited or had a zero-point bye to be downfloaters was to prevent them from getting a pairing-allocated bye after already missing a game. <br> Now, the new C. 9 criterion prevents this from happening. |
| A. 8 (note) | The artificial value defined above was chosen in order to be strictly less than the lowest score of the bracket, and generic enough to work with different scoring-point systems and in presence of non-existent, empty or sparsely populated scoregroups that may follow the current one. | The mention of "brackets" was incorrect: a bracket is statically followed by scoregroups. |


| A. 9 | Round-Pairing Outlook <br> The pairing of a round (called round-pairing) is complete if all the players (except at most one, who receives the pairing-allocated bye) have been paired and the absolute criteria C.1-C. 3 have been complied with. The pairing process starts with the top scoregroup, and continues bracket by bracket until all the scoregroups, in descending order, have been used and the round-pairing is complete. <br> If it is impossible to complete a round-pairing, the arbiter shall decide what to do. <br> How if duing this the down (posibly no poduce by the bre jus paired, togethe with the reming plays, do nollow the <br>  pais is paltimate Paing (PpB). Thescor it resident play is all "collaping" scoll the plors with elo the co llo <br>  <br>  B (CU), the which will omp the roung <br> Section B describes the pairing process of a single bracket. <br> Section C describes all the criteria that the pairing of a bracket has to satisfy (in order of priority). <br> Section E describes the colour allocation rules that determine which players will play with White. | The first sentence has been moved to reflect the wording of the recently redefined Burstein System. The same goes for the added parenthetic clause at the end. <br> The removed parts are a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| B. 4 | Evaluation of the candidate <br> If the candidate built as shown in B. 3 complies with all criteria $\ddagger$ from C. 1 to C.54), and all the quality criteria from C. 65 to C. 2119 are fulfilled, the candidate is called "perfect" and is (immediately) accepted. Otherwise, apply B. 5 in order to find a perfect candidate; or, if no such candidate exists, apply B.8. | See the new C. 5 (PAB Criterion) -not a strict quality criterion defined in its own sectionand the new C.9, which explain the new wording and references. |
| B. 8 | Actions when no perfect candidate exists <br> Choose the best available candidate. In order to do so, consider that a candidate is better than another if it better satisfies the PAB Criterion (C.5) or a quality criterion (C.65-C.2119) of higher priority; or, all quality criteria being equally satisfied, it is generated earlier than the other one in the sequence of the candidates (see B. 6 or B.7). |  |
| C. 4 | If the PPB (A.9) after the bracket has been paired, its downfloaters, together with the players from all the remaining scoregroups, shall allow the completion of the round-pairing. | The first clause was removed as a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process. <br> The wording has then been adjusted to clarify the goal of the Completion Criterion. |
| C. 5 | PAB Criterion <br> minimize the score of the assignee of the pairing-allocated-bye. | New criterion, introduced to ensure that the pairing-allocated bye always goes to somebody with the lowest possible score (as happens in the other pairing systems). |
| C. 6 | minimize the number of downfloaters (equivalent to: maximize the number of pairs). | The text of the criterion and the note have been reversed to have all "minimize"(s) in the criteria. |
| C. 8 | If the is downfloaters so that first to of arser to minize the PSD (S. 5 and 6 ) in the following bracket fust in following every criterion from C. 1 to C. 7 is complied with. | The first clause has been removed as a consequence of the simplification of the pairing process. <br> The rest is a more synthetic version of the same criterion from the Burstein System. |
| C. 9 | minimize the number of unplayed games of the assignee of the pairing-allocatedbye. | New criterion to align the pairing-allocated bye assignment with what is done in other systems. |

# Tournament Entry Portal 

## Functional Specification

## Author: IA Hendrik du Toit

| Document type |
| :--- |
| Subject of Report |
| Document version |
| Date |

## Contents

1. OBJECTIVE OF THE FUNCTIONAL SPECIFICATION .....  .6
2. INTRODUCTION .....  7
2.1 Challenges and Issues .....  7
2.2 Contact Information and Delays. .....  8
2.3 RoLes and Responsibilities .....  8
2.4 Tournament Diversity .....  9
2.5 Alignment with FIDE's Mission ..... 10
2.6 SIMILAR SySTEMS OR InSPIRATION ..... 10
2.7 Project Timeline and Phases ..... 10
2.8 RISKS ..... 10
3. SCOPE AND CONTEXT ..... 11
3.1 Tournament Coverage ..... 11
3.2 Current Processes and Challenges ..... 11
3.3 Integration and System Compatibility ..... 11
3.4 REGULATORY and LEGAL Considerations, ..... 12
3.5 Stakeholder Roles. ..... 13
3.6 CONSTRAINTS AND LIMITATIONS ..... 13
3.7 EXPECTED IMPACT ..... 13
3.8 Project Timeline ..... 14
4. STAKEHOLDERS ..... 14
4.1 Primary Stakeholders ..... 14
4.2 USER ROLES ..... 14
4.3 Technical Team ..... 15
4.4 External Partners and Vendors ..... 15
4.5 REGULATORY ENTITIES ..... 15
4.6 UsER Groups and Preferences ..... 16
4.7 COLLABORATION AND COMMUNICATION ..... 16
5. REQUIREMENTS AND FEATURES ..... 16
5.1 USER Profiles and Communication ..... 16
5.2 Tournament Management ..... 17
5.3 Invitation and Contract Management ..... 18
5.4 Data Integration and Security ..... 18
5.5 Feedback and Future Enhancements, ..... 19
6. TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS ..... 20
6.1 SECURITY ..... 20
6.2 Scalability and Performance ..... 20
6.3 Integration with Existing Systems ..... 21
6.4 USER EXPERIENCE AND ACCESSIBILITY ..... 21
6.5 Technology Stack ..... 21
6.6 Data Backup and Recovery ..... 22
6.7 Development and Testing. ..... 22
6.8 DoCumentation and Training ..... 22
7. TESTING AND DEPLOYMENT ..... 23
7.1 Testing StRATEGY ..... 23
7.2 Test Scenarios and Cases ..... 24
7.3 Performance Testing ..... 25
7.4 Security Testing ..... 27
7.5 USER Acceptance Testing (UAT) ..... 29
7.6 Regression Testing ..... 31
7.7 Hosting Environment ..... 33
7.8 USER TRAINING AND DOCUMENTATION ..... 35
7.9 Monitoring and Support ..... 35
8. SUPPORT AND TRAINING ..... 36
9. USER TRAINING ..... 36
9.2 Training Materials ..... 37
9.3 Training Delivery Methods ..... 37
9.4 Administrator Training ..... 37
9.5 USER SUPPORT CHANNEL ..... 37
9.6 Support Response Time ..... 37
9.7 Feedback and Improvement ..... 37
9.8 Continuous Training and Updates ..... 38
9.9 USER ENGAGEMENT AND COMMUNITY BUILDING ..... 38
9.10 MULTILINGUAL SUPPORT ..... 38
10. FUTURE ENHANCEMENTS ..... 38
10.1 User Feedback and Prioritization ..... 38
10.2 Feature Roadmap. ..... 39
10.3 USER EXPERIENCE IMPROVEMENTS ..... 39
10.4 Integration and Compatibility ..... 39
10.5 SeCurity and Compliance Updates. ..... 39
10.6 Scalability and Performance Improvements ..... 39
10.7 MOBILE AND MULTI-PLATFORM SUPPORT ..... 39
10.8 Analytics and Reporting Enhancements ..... 40
10.9 Community and User Engagement Features ..... 40
10.10 InTERNATIONALIZATION AND LOCALIZATION ..... 40
11. PHASED APPROACH - CHARTING THE ROAD AHEAD ..... 40
11.1 Comprehensive Data and Process Analysis: ..... 40
11.2 Vendor Evaluation and Functionality Matrix: ..... 41
11.3 Cost Estimation and Financial Planning: ..... 41
11.4 DECISION-MAKIng on DEvelopment Approach ..... 41
11.5 ImPLEMENTATION Roadmap. ..... 42
11.6 Continuous Monitoring and Evaluation ..... 42
ANNEXURE A - LIST OF 3 ${ }^{\text {RD }}$ PARTY VENDORS ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.
ANNEXURE B - PROPOSAL BY MANGED EVENTS
ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.
ANNEXURE C - OMNIA CHESS ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.
ANNEXURE D - FEDCHESS ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.

## Potential Conflict of Interest

1. Professional Background and Role: I am currently engaged as a Senior Full Stack and Lead Developer. This role has equipped me with extensive expertise and a deep understanding of the technical aspects relevant to this project.
2. Involvement in Similar Projects: It is pertinent to disclose that I am actively involved in the development of a system that bears similarities to the subject of this report. This involvement may present a potential conflict of interest, which I wish to transparently acknowledge.
3. Source of Expertise and Knowledge: The insights and recommendations presented in this document are grounded in my years of professional experience in the field of software development. This experience has been instrumental in shaping my understanding and analysis of the technical specifications discussed herein.
4. Intellectual Property Considerations: I wish to clarify that most of the information, ideas, and concepts shared in this document are derived from my personal intellectual property. They are the product of my professional experiences and expertise in software development.
5. Commitment to Objectivity: Despite the potential conflict of interest, I am committed to maintaining the highest standards of objectivity and integrity in presenting this report. My aim is to provide unbiased, fact-based analysis and recommendations to the best of my knowledge and professional judgment.

IA Hendrik du Toit

## 1. Objective of the Functional Specification

The objective of a Functional Specification in software development and systems engineering is to clearly and comprehensively outline the functionality and requirements of a proposed system or product. Key aspects of this objective include:
6. Defining System Functionality: It provides a detailed description of the system's functions, features, and operations. This can include specific behaviours, actions, inputs, outputs, and user interactions.
7. Communicating Requirements It serves as a communication tool between stakeholders, including developers, project managers, clients, and end-users. By clearly outlining the expectations and requirements, it ensures that everyone involved has a shared understanding of what the system should do.
8. Guiding Development and Design The functional specification acts as a roadmap for developers and designers, giving them a clear set of criteria and functionalities to implement. This helps in maintaining focus and direction during the development process.
9. Setting Benchmarks for Testing and Validation It establishes the criteria against which the final product will be tested and validated. By comparing the system's actual functionalities with those outlined in the specification, testers can verify whether the system meets the intended requirements.
10. Managing Scope and Avoiding Scope Creep By providing a detailed outline of the system's functionalities, the specification helps in managing project scope. It acts as a reference point to ensure that features or changes that are not part of the original plan are carefully evaluated before being included.
11. Facilitating Change Management In the event of changes to system requirements, the functional specification can be updated to reflect these changes, helping in managing the change process and keeping the project on track.
12. Providing a Basis for Estimates and Scheduling It aids in estimating resources, time, and cost required for the project, as it gives a clear picture of the system's complexity and requirements.
13. Assisting in User Documentation and Training The specification can be used as a foundation for creating user manuals, training materials, and help guides, as it contains detailed information about the system's functionality.

In summary, a Functional Specification is a critical document in the system development lifecycle, aimed at ensuring clarity, facilitating effective communication, guiding development, and ensuring that the final product meets the intended requirements and user needs.

## 2. Introduction

### 2.1 Challenges and Issues

2.1.1 Primary Goal of the Tournament Entry Portal Project

- Automate the current manual system: Implement processes to transition from a manual system to an online system with checks and balances, accessible to the chess community, while retaining FIDE's corporate identity and portraying a professional organization.
- Entry Mechanism for Players: Provide a streamlined entry process for players into FIDE tournaments.
- Registration System: Develop a registration system for both team and individual tournaments, usable by FIDE, national federations, chess clubs, and other organizers.
- Optimization of Registration Processes: Streamline and digitize the registration process for world events organized by FIDE.
- Comprehensive Event Management: Include features for event management, transportation (including VISA processing), itinerary and boarding management, accreditation systems, and a ticketing portal.
2.1.2 Challenges and Issues in Current Tournament Entry Process
- Manual Systems: Existing systems are manual, lack central record-keeping, and require reinventing processes for each new tournament.
- Inefficiencies: Data collection from players, manual contracts, lack of direct imports of players into endorsed programs, and communication challenges with organizers and players.
- Lack of Official Registration System: Each organizer independently creates a system, often inefficiently due to time constraints and lack of expertise.
2.1.3 Main Objectives for the Portal
- Eliminate Manual Processes: Automate registration and official processes, improve speed, ensure proper record-keeping, and standardize processes.
- Official Registration System: An official system with different functionalities for various types of tournaments (team and individual).
- Optimization and Standardization: Improve the process of data entry and standardize the registration process.


### 2.1.4 Key Requirements for the Portal

- Comprehensive Functionality: Include process automation, record keeping, office and member administration, tournament management, contract management, accommodation management, and travel arrangements.
- Integration with Existing Systems: Incorporate FIDE ratings, payment systems, and functions for automatic preparation of invitations.
- User Accessibility and Security: Ensure modern, easy access for both FIDE and customers, with robust cybersecurity.


### 2.2 Contact Information and Delays

2.2.1 Impact of Manual Contract Process

- Resource and Efficiency Impact: The current manual process burdens legal resources, slows down operations, and is time-consuming.
- Importance of Direct Contact: Direct contact with players is crucial for managing accommodations, visa issues, and providing quality services.
2.2.2 Primary Users of the Portal
- Diverse User Base: Global Strategy Commission, Events Commission, Organizers, Players, Other FIDE Staff, National Federations, and the General Public.
- Impact on Interactions and Responsibilities: Simplified registration procedures and better communication.


### 2.3 Roles and Responsibilities

2.3.1 Standardisation Task Force Committee

- Initiation and Follow-up: The Standardisation Task Force Committee is responsible for initiating the portal creation and ensuring alignment, standardization, and optimization of FIDE events.


### 2.3.2 Events Commission (EVE)

1. EVE is responsible for FIDE Competitions outside the aegis of GSC and administering the International Organiser title process.
2. EVE is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:

- Regulations on Seminars \& Title Award for Organisers
- General Regulations for FIDE Competitions
- Regulations for World competitions outside the World Championship cycle and not under the aegis of GSC
2.3.3 Global Strategy Commission (GSC)

1. GSC develops a long-term strategy of worldwide chess development and ensures that events in the World Championship cycle are organised.
2. GSC is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:

- Olympiad and FIDE Top-Level Competitions
- World Championship Cycle
- Recommendations for the Organisation of FIDE Top-Level Competitions 2.3.4 Technical Commission (TEC)

1. TEC provides information for organisers to prepare their tournaments, and tests electronic devices to ensure they are compliant with FIDE standards.
2. Amongst others, TEC has the following ongoing responsibilities:

- Develop minimum usability guidelines, UX / UI / traceability recommendations for tournament software.
- Certify software programs that meet the established criteria, pending a final approval by the FIDE Council.
- Develop standards to ensure adoption of Chess ID by all tournament software.
- Develop open protocols for data exchange between electronic chess devices. Test and certify software implementations of such protocols.

3. Amongst others, TEC is responsible for suggesting amendments for the following regulations to Council, and applying them in their ongoing responsibilities:

- General Handling Rules for Swiss Tournaments
- Other FIDE Approved Pairing Systems
- Endorsement of a Software Program


### 2.4 Tournament Diversity

2.4.1 Variation in Tournaments

- Diverse Formats and Participants: Tournaments vary widely in size, format, participants, time control, and qualifying system.
- Focus for Portal Implementation: Focus on large-scale tournaments like the Olympiad for initial testing and implementation.


### 2.5 Alignment with FIDE's Mission

2.5.1 Anticipated Benefits

Streamlining Entry Process: Saving time and resources, better event organization, and modernising FIDE's approach to tournament management.

### 2.6 Similar Systems or Inspiration

Existing Systems: Various existing systems in the chess and sports industry can inspire the development of the portal, with a focus on integrating multiple sub-systems to meet FIDE's unique needs. See Error! Reference source not found.Error! Reference source not found.

### 2.7 Project Timeline and Phases

Chess Olympiad 2024: The portal should be operational before the Chess Olympiad in 2024, with a proposed timeline to finalize technical specifications within two months and subsequent phases for provider selection, development, and testing.

### 2.8 Risks

2.8.1 Vendor Lock-in

- Long-term Commitment Risks: There is a risk of being locked into a vendor without future expansion capabilities in areas like integration with ratings, title management, federation management, etc.
- Difficulty in Transition: Exiting such commitments can be challenging due to data porting, functionality mapping, and retraining of staff and the entire community.
2.8.2 Loss of Corporate Identity
- Brand Dilution: There is a risk of losing FIDE's corporate identity by adopting third-party solutions.
2.8.3 Running Dual Systems
- Scope and Expansion Concerns: The narrow scope of a "Tournament Entry Portal" may hinder future expansion.
- Administrative Complexity: Maintaining both the current FIDE
administration system and the new portal could lead to data anomalies, confusion, and administrative errors.


## 3. Scope and Context

### 3.1 Tournament Coverage

### 3.1.1 Types of FIDE Tournaments Covered

- Comprehensive Coverage: The portal will cover all FIDE tournaments, initially focusing on GSC tournaments.
- Primary Focus: Emphasis on major events such as the Olympiad, World Cup, World and European team, and individual championships.
- High-Participant Events: Priority given to events with many participants, particularly mass tournaments.


### 3.1.2 Tournament Variability

- Annual Event Count: FIDE oversees approximately 25-30 diverse events yearly, varying in format, location, and scale.
- Language and Geographical Considerations: English as the working language, with potential inclusion of Spanish, German, French, and Arabic to accommodate a global user base.


### 3.2 Current Processes and Challenges

3.2.1 Existing Tournament Entry Processes

- Variability and Manual Processes: Current systems vary with each organizer and department, mainly relying on manual methods like emails.
- Lack of Unified System: No consistent system is in place, leading to inefficiencies and the need for new systems for each event


### 3.3 Integration and System Compatibility

3.3.1 Existing Systems for Integration

- Member Administration and Rating Systems: Integration with in-house systems managing member federations and individuals, and FIDE's rating system.
- Complementary Tools: Compatibility with tools like Microsoft Office, Google forms, and Swiss-Manager (not within FIDE).


### 3.3.2 Alignment with FIDE's Strategy and Mission

- Professional Image and Efficiency: The portal will enhance FIDE's professional image and care for its members, aligning with the strategy of promoting chess.
3.3.3 Third-Party Integrations
- Additional Functionalities: Integration with systems for tournament reports, tournament results, payment systems, visa invitations, and possibly single sign-on (SSO) options and mobile app development.


### 3.4 Regulatory and Legal Considerations

3.4.1 Data Privacy and International Regulations: Compliance with data protection laws and regulations relevant to esports and international chess events.
3.4.2 Compliance with FIDE Charter:

- Definitions - FIDE Database: the official database with biographical (profile) details of players, arbiters, trainers, organisers and officials with FIDE identity number, home federation, FIDE rating, FIDE titles and FIDE positions held as per the FIDE Directory, rated tournaments and match results, as well as the world, continental and country rankings occupied by the individual, as published on the FIDE website in accordance with general data protection rules.
- Definitions - FIDE Positions: the positions occupied by an individual in the organizational structures of FIDE, FIDE Continents and FIDE Zones and as published on the FIDE website as part of the FIDE Directory and FIDE database.
- "Article 4.13 FIDE is committed to the protection of personal data of all chess stakeholders"
- "Article 11.r) communicate and update, within one month of any change, the following data:
- address and contacts.
- registered email address, to be used for all official communications to and from FIDE, which allows to legally track and prove the delivery of their emails and documents, signed electronically.
- name and contacts of their President and FIDE Delegate.
3.4.3 with respect to general data protection regulations.


### 3.5 Stakeholder Roles

### 3.5.1 Key Stakeholders

- Diverse Involvement: Involvement of Standardization Task Force, Events Commission, Global Strategy Commission, successful bidders, administrative staff, and member federations.
- Roles and Responsibilities: Overseeing competition organization, long-term chess development strategies, operational management, and player engagement.


### 3.5.2 Role of FIDE's Technical Team

- Consultative and Developmental Role: Volunteer technical team to provide essential input in vendor selection or system development, with consideration for project management remuneration.


### 3.5.3 External Partners and Vendors

- Potential Involvement: Deciding between in-house development or outsourcing, with subsequent maintenance by FIDE's technical resources. See for a list of potential third party vendors.


### 3.6 Constraints and Limitations

3.6.1 Project Constraints

- Budget and Resource Limitations: Budget constraints and volunteer time limitations, necessitating efficient resource allocation and project management.
3.6.2 Risks and Obstacles
- Data Integration and Unique Functionalities: Challenges in integrating existing large databases and meeting specific needs like player title management, a unique structural hierarchy and rating system.


### 3.7 Expected Impact

3.7.1 Operational Improvements

- Efficiency and Cost Savings: Streamlining operations, optimising staff work, and potential for income growth through system functionalities like ticketing.
- Services to Members: Delivering services to member federations to improve their own corporate governance which in return will ease the task of FIDE.


### 3.8 Project Timeline

3.8.1 Development and Deployment Timeline

- Urgent Need and Phased Approach: High priority for readiness by the 2024 Olympiad, with phased development starting from a basic member administration system to more complex functionalities.


## 4. Stakeholders

### 4.1 Primary Stakeholders

4.1.1 Roles and Responsibilities

- Key Entities: Standardisation Task Force (STF), Management Board (MB), Events Commission (EVE), Global Strategy Commission (GSC), and Technical Commission (TEC).
- FIDE and Players: FIDE as the governing body and players as the primary participants.


### 4.2 User Roles

4.2.1 Role of Players

- Registration and Interaction: Players will update user accounts, register for tournaments, submit data, and provide feedback.
4.2.2 Responsibilities of Tournament Organizers
- Tournament Management Tasks: Tournament registration and maintenance, allocation of hotels, logging flight details for transfers, contract maintenance, and registration of participants in the accreditation system.
4.2.3 Responsibilities of Federations
- Registration of Players and Structures: Currently it is the responsibility of federations to register players, structures, and other management information. This will be the case for the foreseeable future.


### 4.3 Technical Team

4.3.1 Role in Development and Maintenance

- Provision of Expertise and Support: The technical team at FIDE, a blend of salaried professionals and dedicated volunteers, is tasked with offering a broad spectrum of technical expertise and digital support. Their role is crucial in ensuring both the development and ongoing maintenance of systems operate smoothly and effectively.
- Comprehensive System Inventory Development: A key responsibility of the technical team involves the creation and management of a detailed inventory. This inventory encompasses an exhaustive overview of all existing processes, the current infrastructure, and the available resources. This systematic compilation is essential for understanding the present state of operations and for planning future enhancements and integrations.


### 4.4 External Partners and Vendors

4.4.1 Involvement in the Project

- Collaboration: Potential involvement of external partners or vendors such as software developers, security experts, or third-party integrators.


### 4.5 Regulatory Entities

4.5.1 Compliance and Regulation Stakeholders

- Acknowledging Regulatory Considerations: It is critical to recognize and address the role of regulatory or compliance entities relevant to the project. While specific mandates or expectations from these entities may yet need precise identification, their influence on the project's direction and compliance requirements is undeniable.
- Involvement of FIDE Legal Advisor: To ensure comprehensive adherence to all regulatory demands, the active involvement of FIDE's Legal Advisor is indispensable. Their expertise will guide the project in meeting legal standards, mitigating risks, and aligning with both national and international regulatory frameworks. This proactive engagement is pivotal in navigating the complex landscape of legal and compliance obligations.


## 4.6

## User Groups and Preferences

4.6.1 Specific Needs and Access Levels

- Diverse User Groups: Office administrators, tournament organizers, arbiters, ratings officers, and players.
- Access Management: Different levels of user access, such as Super Admin (FIDE Events Team), Admin (Organizers of EVE Tournaments), Federation, and Player.
- Functionality for Different Formats: The portal should accommodate varying needs depending on tournament formats.
4.6.2 Role of FIDE Administrators
- Administrative Functions: FIDE administrators will use the system daily for managing member federation details, organising, and registering tournaments, and overall governance of the portal.


### 4.7 Collaboration and Communication

- Ticketing System: Implementing a system like Jira for logging issues, requesting enhancements, and providing a platform for stakeholder collaboration.
- Communication Channels: Direct access, emails, social media, and collaboration tools for ongoing stakeholder interaction and feedback.


## 5. Requirements and Features

### 5.1 User Profiles and Communication

### 5.1.1 User Profile Requirements

- Essential Information: Name, surname, email, mobile number, federation, country, rating, passport details, and titles.
- FIDE ID Integration: Player data populated from their FIDE ID, including title, name, ratings, and federation.
- Additional Details: Positions in federations (e.g., president, treasurer), and user preferences and logs.
5.1.2 Customization Options for User Profiles
- Record Keeping: Maintain records of individuals' positions within their federations.
- Personal Preferences: Capturing food and health-related information, considering data privacy concerns.


### 5.1.3 Notification and Communication Mechanisms

- Diverse Channels: Email, WhatsApp Business, direct messaging to mobile devices, SMS, social media, and a live chat support system.


### 5.2 Tournament Management

5.2.1 Creation and Maintenance:

- Comprehensive Tournament Detailing: This involves meticulous documentation of tournament specifics, including dates, locations, formats, and categories, ensuring clarity and accessibility for all stakeholders.
- Defining Tournament Parameters: Establishment of rules, entry criteria, and categorization (e.g., age groups, skill levels) to structure the tournament effectively and ensure fair play and competitiveness.
- Regulation Compliance and Documentation: Crafting and maintaining a robust set of regulations that govern the conduct of tournaments, ensuring adherence to both FIDE standards and local regulatory requirements.
- $\quad$ Strategic Social Media Publication: Leveraging social media platforms for widespread dissemination of tournament information, updates, and engaging content to enhance visibility and participant engagement.
5.2.2 Control and Access:
- Player Management: Facilitating player registrations, managing profiles, and ensuring eligibility criteria are met, while providing players with access to tournament information and personal participation details.
- Administrator and Organizer Empowerment: Equipping administrators and organizers with tools to efficiently manage tournaments, from logistical arrangements to real-time updates, enhancing the overall organizational efficacy
- Arbiter Inclusion: Integrating arbiter roles within the system, providing them with necessary tools for match oversight, rule enforcement, and decision recording, to uphold the integrity of the competition.
5.2.3 Integration:
- Seamless Integration with Existing Systems: Ensuring the tournament
management system works in harmony with existing FIDE systems, particularly the rating system, to allow for real-time updates and accurate reflection of players' standings.
- Robust Player Database Connectivity: Establishing a dynamic link with the comprehensive player database for efficient retrieval and update of player information, thereby ensuring that tournament records are consistently accurate and up to date.


### 5.3 Invitation and Contract Management

5.3.1 Issuing Invitations

- Types of Invitations: Open signups, organizer-selected players, and criteriabased selections (rating/sex).
- Process Publication: Information about registration processes published on official webpages.


### 5.3.2 Contract Management

- Contract Visibility: Allow contracts to be seen and signed within the portal, with content written outside the portal.
5.3.3 Electronic Signing Workflow
- Legal Compliance: Adapt to the legal requirements of various countries, with a focus on electronic contract signing.


### 5.4 Data Integration and Security

5.4.1 Data Integration Needs

- Key Integrations: Full integration with FIDE rating systems and other existing databases.
5.4.2 Single Sign-On Functionality
- SSO Options: Integration with email services like Gmail for ease of access.
5.4.3 Data Validation and Error Prevention
- Accuracy Checks: Ensure correctness of details like FIDE ratings and flight information.
5.4.4 Tournament Calendar and Document Repository
- Calendar Features: Basic information like date, name, place of tournaments.
- Document Storage: Contracts, passport scans, photos, and tournament files with varying access levels.
5.4.5 User Experience and Performance
- Design and Accessibility: Mobile-friendly design, available in FIDE's official languages, and optimized for performance.
- Authentication and Authorization: Username and password combination, possible 2-factor authentication, and linkage with FIDE ID.


### 5.5 Feedback and Future Enhancements

5.5.1 Strategic Development for Expansion:

Develop the system with a scalable architecture to seamlessly integrate diverse functionalities. This includes:

- Live Ratings Real-time updates of players' ratings for a dynamic and engaging user experience.
- E-Commerce Capabilities Incorporation of online retail features for chess paraphernalia, entry tickets, and equipment, enhancing revenue streams.
- Rating and Pairing Systems Inclusion of sophisticated algorithms for player rating calculations and tournament pairing processes.
- Robust Administration System Build a versatile administration interface for streamlined management of tournaments and user accounts.
- Online Chess Platform Integration Facilitate online gameplay, potentially opening avenues for virtual tournaments and training sessions.
5.5.2 Methodical Implementation Process:
- Feature Prioritization Initially concentrate on functionalities critical to FIDE tournaments, ensuring a stable and efficient rollout. Gradually expand to include additional features in alignment with user needs and organizational objectives.
- Feedback Loop Management Leverage technical commissions for systematically collecting, analysing, and responding to user feedback. This process will be instrumental in guiding feature enhancements and addressing user concerns.
- Strategic Third-Party Integrations Evaluate and incorporate third-party
systems and services, such as Chess-ID, keeping in mind existing sponsorship agreements and the potential for enhancing system capabilities.
- Comprehensive User Testing Implement a variety of testing methods, including A/B testing for user experience optimization, stress testing for system resilience under high loads, and rigorous security assessments to safeguard data integrity and user privacy.


## 6. Technical Considerations

### 6.1 Security

6.1.1 Security Requirements

- Data Protection and Privacy: Adherence to EU and USA laws for personal and financial data. Restricting user access to pertinent data only. High data protection for PII (Personally Identifiable Information).
- Compliance Regulations: Compliance with GDPR and other relevant data protection laws.


### 6.2 Scalability and Performance

6.2.1 User Load and Traffic

- Scalability Design: The system should be designed for both vertical and horizontal scaling. Cloud hosting could be considered for cost-effective resource management.
- Performance Benchmarks: API responses should be in milliseconds, with optimized media content for various internet speeds.
- Future Growth and Scalability Considerations: As the system evolves, encompassing both the functionality of existing systems and future enhancements, a key focus must be on scalability. This means designing the infrastructure and software architecture in a manner that supports expansion and adaptation to growing user numbers, increased data processing, and emerging technological advancements. The aim is to ensure that the system can efficiently handle an escalating volume of interactions and data without compromising on performance, security, or user experience. This forwardthinking approach is vital for accommodating the evolving needs of FIDE, its players, administrators, and the broader chess community.


### 6.3 Integration with Existing Systems

6.3.1 System Integration

- Integration with FIDE Systems: Incorporate the rating system and potentially merge its functionalities into the new portal. FIDE ID to be the key connector.
- Third-Party APIs: Integration with payment systems, notification systems, and other necessary APIs.


### 6.4 User Experience and Accessibility

6.4.1 UX Measures

- Design and Responsiveness: Ensure the portal is user-friendly, responsive, and adheres to FIDE's official languages.
- Accessibility Standards: The portal should accommodate users with disabilities.
6.4.2 Hosting and Infrastructure
6.4.3 Hosting Considerations
- Hosting Location and High Availability: Determine hosting location, with emphasis on high availability and disaster recovery planning.
6.4.4 Cloud Infrastructure
- Cloud Service Providers: Decisions on cloud service providers are pending.


### 6.5 Technology Stack

6.5.1 Development Technologies

- Languages and Frameworks: Python for backend, FastAPI for API integration, React for mobile interfaces, Reahl for frontend, and consideration for PHP, NodeJS, and AWS/Azure/Google Cloud services.
- Database Systems: MySQL, HBase, S3, Redshift, and Postgres.


### 6.5.2 Data Management

- Storage Solutions: Preference for MySQL and cloud-based storage solutions.
6.5.3 Monitoring Tools
- Health and Performance Monitoring: Implementation of modern tools like

New Relic and Splunk for continuous monitoring.
6.5.4 Maintenance and Updates

- Continuous Improvement: Utilization of Test-Driven Development (TTD), Continuous Integration/Continuous Deployment (CI/CD) pipelines, and DevSecOps processes.


### 6.6 Data Backup and Recovery

6.6.1 Backup Mechanisms

- Data Safeguarding: High availability system design and cloud-based solutions like AWS RDS for data backup.
6.6.2 Disaster Recovery
- Recovery Planning: Development of a comprehensive disaster recovery plan is essential.


### 6.7 Development and Testing

6.7.1 Development Methodologies

- Agile and DevSecOps: Agile methodologies combined with DevSecOps practices for development lifecycle.
6.7.2 Testing Regimen
- Comprehensive Testing: Functional, performance, security, and regression testing, with CI/CD pipeline integration.


### 6.8 Documentation and Training

6.8.1 Documentation Provision

- Comprehensive Guides: Provision of video and text guidelines, with technical documentation by the development team.
6.8.2 User Training Materials
- Ease of Use: Focus on intuitive design, supplemented with videos and minimal user guides.


## 7. Testing and Deployment

### 7.1 Testing Strategy

### 7.1.1 Planned Testing Strategy

1. Requirement Analysis Phase:

- Review Requirements: Thorough understanding of software requirements to guide the testing process.

Planning Phase:

- Test Plan Development: Document outlining testing strategy, objectives, schedule, resource allocation, and testing environment.
- Risk Analysis: Identify and plan for potential risks in the testing process.

3. Design Phase:

- Test Case Development: Create detailed test cases based on requirements covering all software aspects.
- Test Environment Setup: Ensure the testing environment mirrors the production environment.

4. Types of Testing:

- Unit Testing: Test individual components or units of the software.
- Integration Testing: Test the interfaces between integrated units.
- $\quad$ System Testing: Test the entire system against specified requirements.
- Acceptance Testing: Conducted by end-users to ensure software meets their needs.

5. Execution Phase:

- Run Test Cases: Execute test cases as per the plan.
- Defect Tracking: Log and track resolution of defects or issues found during testing.
- Regression Testing: Conducted whenever changes are made to ensure existing functionality is not affected.

6. Non-Functional Testing:

- Performance Testing: Test software performance under various
conditions.
- Security Testing: Check for vulnerabilities and data protection.
- Usability Testing: Ensure software is user-friendly and meets UI requirements.

7. Reporting Phase:

- Test Summary Report: Detail what was tested, defects found, and overall software quality.

8. Maintenance Phase:

- Post-Deployment Testing: Continuous testing after deployment for any issues in the production environment.
- Feedback and Improvement: Gather feedback to improve both the testing process and software.

9. Test-Driven Development (TDD) Approach:

- Incorporate TDD practices including unit tests, smoke testing, and integration tests.
7.1.2 Dedicated Testing Environment

1. Separate Environments: Establishment of a dedicated testing environment is essential.
2. Environment Types:

- Development environment.
- $\quad$ Staging environment (QA/UAT environment).
- Production environment.


### 7.2 Test Scenarios and Cases

7.2.1 Specific Test Scenarios or Use Cases

1. Comprehensive Coverage: Test cases should encompass all functionality requirements, including both positive and negative scenarios.
2. Example Scenarios:

- User Login Process:
- Validate user ID.
- Validate password length.
- Check the response to incorrect password attempts.

3. Tournament Functionality: Test cases for various tournament scenarios.
4. Breakdown of Cases: Include detailed scenarios to reduce complexity and ensure thorough testing.

### 7.2.2 Development, Documentation, and Execution of Test Cases

1. Test Case Development:

- Utilize final requirements specifications and historical data from past successes and failures.
- Involve various interest groups in documenting test cases.

2. Rigorous Testing: Apply the same level of rigorous testing whether FIDE opts for third-party software or in-house development.
3. Documentation:

- Document test cases in tools like Confluence.
- Share documented cases with developers for unit test preparation.

4. Business User Involvement: All test cases should be validated and signed off by business users.

### 7.3 Performance Testing

7.3.1 Specific Performance Testing Objectives

1. Load Testing Objectives:

- Assess system behaviour under expected load.
- Identify performance bottlenecks.
- Validate system stability and endurance.
- Benchmark performance metrics.

2. Stress Testing Objectives:

- Determine system limits and behaviour under extreme conditions.
- Identify failure points and recovery mechanisms.
- Test system failover capabilities.

3. Scalability Testing Objectives:

- Measure system capacity for growth.
- Assess effectiveness of scaling strategies.
- Predict future capacity needs.
- Test performance at different configurations.

4. Load Testing Emphasis:

- Focus on user registration, particularly bulk registrations towards deadlines.
- Provide options for import functionality where necessary.


### 7.3.2 Performance Benchmarks and Response Time Targets

1. Web Applications:

- Page load time: 2-5 seconds.
- API response time: Under 500 milliseconds.

2. Enterprise Applications:

- Database query response: Under 200 milliseconds.
- Batch processing: Complete within a predefined window.

3. Mobile Applications:

- Screen load time: 1-2 seconds.
- Data fetching: Under 1 second.

4. E-Commerce Platforms:

- Checkout process: Under 3 seconds.
- Search functionality: Within 2 seconds.

5. Cloud-Based Services:

- Data synchronization: Within a few seconds.
- Service availability: Uptime of $99.9 \%$ or higher.

6. Financial Transactions:

- Transaction processing: Within a few seconds.

7. Real-Time Systems:

- Data processing: Often requires times in milliseconds.

8. General Benchmarks:

- API response: Milliseconds.
- Image loading: Optimize for quick load with progressive enhancement to better quality.


### 7.4 Security Testing

### 7.4.1 Security Testing Process

1. Initial Assessment:

- Understand system architecture and functionality.
- Conduct a risk assessment to identify potential threats and vulnerabilities.

2. Code Reviews:

- Utilize static application security testing (SAST) tools.
- Conduct manual reviews, focusing on security-critical components.
- Implement peer review sessions.

3. Penetration Testing:

- Engage external experts for black-box testing.
- Conduct internal white-box testing.
- Use automated penetration testing tools for known vulnerabilities.

4. Vulnerability Scanning:

- Regularly implement vulnerability scanning.
- Update security practices based on emerging threats.

5. Security Testing in Development Lifecycle:

- Integrate security testing into CI/CD pipeline.
- Adopt a 'shift left' approach for early-stage security considerations.

6. Compliance and Standards:

- Adhere to security standards like OWASP, ISO 27001, and industryspecific regulations.

7. Incident Response and Remediation:

- Establish an incident response plan.
- Develop a strategy for quick remediation of vulnerabilities.

8. 

Training and Awareness:

- Provide developer training on secure coding practices.
- Conduct security awareness programs for staff.

9. Continuous Monitoring and Improvement:

- Monitor security logs for suspicious activities.
- Regularly update security strategies and practices.

10. Development Practices:

- Code scanning as part of development check-in.
- $\quad \mathrm{CI} / \mathrm{CD}$ for code management and security checks.
7.4.2 Ensuring Data Security and Privacy During Testing

1. Test Data Management Tools:

- Implement data masking and synthetic data generation.
- Anonymize personal data in testing environments.

2. Access Control:

- Restrict access to test environments.
- Implement Role-Based Access Control (RBAC).

3. Secure Testing Environments:

- Isolate test environments from production.
- Utilize virtual machines or containers for added security.

4. Compliance with Regulations:

- Ensure testing process adheres to data protection laws.

5. Data Encryption:

- Encrypt sensitive data in transit and at rest in the testing environment.

6. Security Audits and Penetration Testing:

- Regularly audit the testing environment.
- Perform penetration testing to fix security weaknesses.

7. Secure Data Disposal:

- Ensure secure disposal or anonymization of data post-testing.

8. Monitoring and Logging:

- Monitor access and activities in the test environment.
- Implement anomaly detection systems.

9. Employee Training and Awareness:

- Conduct regular training sessions on data security and privacy.
- Educate staff on best practices for handling sensitive data.

10. Review and Update Policies:

- Regularly review and update data security and privacy policies.

11. Use Secure Communication Channels:

- Ensure secure networks for testing with necessary firewalls and intrusion detection systems.

12. Encryption and Data Law Compliance:

- Encrypt data at rest.
- Adhere to data protection laws of relevant countries.


### 7.5 User Acceptance Testing (UAT)

7.5.1 Plan for User Acceptance Testing

1. UAT Planning:

- Define Objectives: Align UAT with user requirements and business processes.
- $\quad$ Select Testers: Choose a diverse group of end-users based on skill levels and job roles.
- Develop Test Cases/Scenarios: Create real-world test cases, ensuring they are understandable to non-technical users.
- Prepare Test Environment: Set up an environment that mirrors the realworld deployment and is isolated from production.
- Training and Documentation: Provide training and comprehensive documentation to testers.

2. 

Conducting UAT:

- Execute Test Cases: Encourage testers to follow scenarios and use the portal normally.
- Gather Feedback: Collect detailed user feedback, including difficulties and discrepancies.
- Track and Manage Issues: Log and prioritize issues based on severity and business impact.
- Regular Review Meetings: Discuss progress, queries, and feedback.

3. Post-Testing:

- Addressing Issues: Collaborate with developers to resolve issues.
- Re-Testing: Confirm issue resolution with users.
- Final Approval: Obtain approval from stakeholders and end-users.
- Documentation and Sign-Off: Prepare a final UAT report and obtain formal sign-off.

4. Best Practices for Involving End-Users:

- Clear communication, empathy, effective feedback mechanisms, and acknowledgment of user input.

5. Test Tournament: Organize a test tournament with limited invites for practical testing.

### 7.5.2 Criteria and Metrics for UAT Success

1. Test Case Completion and Success Rate:

- Completion and success rates of test cases.
- Number and severity of defects identified.
- Defect resolution rate.

2. User Satisfaction Surveys:

- Feedback scores and qualitative feedback.

3. Requirement Coverage:

- Alignment with business requirements and identification of gaps.

4. Usability Metrics:

- Ease of use and learning curve.

5. Performance Metrics:

- Response time and system reliability during UAT.

6. User Engagement:

- Level of participation and nature of change requests.

7. Compliance and Regulatory Adherence:

- Adherence to industry-specific regulations.

8. Post-Deployment Metrics (If Applicable):

- Adoption rate and nature of support requests post-deployment.

9. Business Impact:

- Impact on business processes, efficiency, and ROI.

10. Successful UAT Indicators:

- Formal approval and sign-off from stakeholders.
- Readiness for deployment without significant reservations.

11. Additional Considerations:

- Convenient navigation and error-free operation.
- Smooth process flow and comprehensive user guides in multiple languages.


### 7.6 Regression Testing

7.6.1 Performing Regression Testing

- Commitment to Regression Testing: Regression testing will be conducted to ensure updates do not introduce defects into existing features.

CI/CD Integration: Regression testing should be part of the Continuous Integration/Continuous Deployment pipelines.
7.6.2 Maintenance and Execution of Regression Test Suites

1. Test Suite Development and Maintenance:

- Develop comprehensive regression test suites based on critical
functionalities and user requirements.
- Prioritize test cases and automate as many as possible.
- Regularly update test suites to reflect application changes.

2. Integration in Development Cycle:

- Integrate regression testing in the CI/CD pipeline.
- Use version control for test scripts and ensure the test environment mirrors the production environment.

3. Test Execution Strategy:

- Execute regression tests regularly (e.g., nightly, after major commits).
- Use relevant test data and run tests in parallel where possible.

4. Monitoring and Reporting:

- Monitor test execution for failures or unexpected behaviour.
- Analyse test results and report key issues to stakeholders.

5. Continuous Improvement:

- Use feedback to improve the application and test suite.
- Regularly review test suite performance and optimize test cases.

6. Collaboration and Communication:

- Keep stakeholders informed about test outcomes.
- Encourage collaboration between developers and testers.

7. Risk-Based Approach:

- Perform regular risk analysis to adjust the focus of regression testing.


### 7.6.3 Deployment Strategy

1. Preparation Phase:

- Finalize release content and set up the production environment.
- Take comprehensive backups and conduct a final risk assessment.

2. Testing and Validation Phase:

- Conduct pre-deployment testing in a staging environment.
- Perform UAT and security/compliance checks.

Deployment Planning:

- $\quad$ Schedule deployment considering user activity patterns.
- Develop a communication plan and a detailed rollout strategy.

4. Deployment Execution:

- Consider phased rollout, such as canary releases and blue/green deployments.
- Use feature toggling and monitor the system closely during deployment.

5. Post-Deployment Phase:

- Perform validation checks and monitor user feedback.
- Be prepared for rollback in case of critical issues.

6. Review and Documentation:

- Conduct a post-deployment review and update documentation.

7. Continuous Monitoring and Support:

- Continuously monitor system performance and provide user support.

8. Best Practices:

- Automate deployment processes and engage stakeholders throughout the process.
- Provide training for significant changes.

9. Major vs. Minor Deployments:

- Major downtime, while minor deployments can occur live.


### 7.7 Hosting Environment

7.7.1 Production Hosting Environment Considerations

1. Server Configurations:

- Hardware specifications tailored to the application's needs.
- $\quad$ Scalable server setup (both vertically and horizontally).
- Security hardening of the operating system and services.

2. Load Balancers:

- Distribution of traffic across servers for balanced load.
- High availability configurations for failover.
- SSL termination and server health checks.

3. Data Backup Solutions:

- Regular backups with off-site storage.
- Comprehensive backup testing and defined retention policies.

4. Database Management:

- Optimized database configurations.
- Database replication for redundancy and performance.
- Robust backup and recovery processes.

5. Networking Considerations:

- Adequate bandwidth for peak traffic.
- Network security measures including intrusion prevention and DDoS protection.
- Reliable DNS setup with failover solutions.

6. Monitoring and Logging:

- System performance and application health monitoring.
- Log management for security and troubleshooting.

7. Disaster Recovery and Redundancy:

- Documented disaster recovery plan.
- Redundancy in critical infrastructure components.

8. Compliance and Security:

- Adherence to regulatory compliance standards.
- Consideration of hosting provider's security certifications.

9. Scalability and Performance Optimization:

- Auto-scaling capabilities.
- Regular performance tuning based on data and load testing.

10. Maintenance and Updates:

- Regular updates and patches.
- Change management for hosting environment updates.

11. Cloud Hosting Solutions:

- Utilization of cloud services (e.g., AWS, Azure) for hosting flexibility and scalability.
- Disaster Recovery and Business Continuity Plan

12. Importance of Disaster Recovery:

- Disaster recovery should be a key consideration in the hosting environment design.
- High Availability (HA) configurations are essential.
- Planning for disaster recovery and business continuity is expected.


### 7.8 User Training and Documentation

7.8.1 End-User Training

- Training Materials and Guides: End-users will be provided with training materials and user guides to effectively use the portal.
- Training Approach: The plan includes comprehensive training sessions, emphasising clear communication and understanding of user needs, especially for non-tech-savvy users.


### 7.9 Monitoring and Support

7.9.1 Monitoring Tools and Mechanisms

- Performance Monitoring: Use APM tools for application performance and server health monitoring.
- User Experience Monitoring: Implement RUM and synthetic transaction monitoring.
- Error and Exception Tracking: Utilize tools for real-time error tracking and exception handling.
- Network Monitoring: Track network performance and security.
- Database Monitoring: Monitor database performance and query execution.
- Security Monitoring: Employ IDS, vulnerability scanning, and SIEM tools.
- Log Management: Implement centralized logging and analysis tools.
- Availability Monitoring: Use uptime monitoring tools.
- Load Testing: Conduct post-deployment load testing.
- Feedback Loops: Gather user feedback via surveys or feedback widgets.
- Custom Metrics and Dashboards: Track custom KPIs and use dashboard tools for visualization.
- Best Practices: Automated alerts, regular audits, scalability of monitoring setup.
7.9.2 User Support and Post-Deployment Issue Management
- Support Team Establishment: Dedicated, well-trained support staff.
- Support Infrastructure: Centralized help desk, FAQ, and knowledge base.
- Multi-Channel Support: Email, phone, chat, and social media monitoring.
- Issue Tracking: Use a ticketing system and manage SLAs.
- Proactive Communication: For major issues, maintain transparency and regular updates.
- Feedback Mechanism: Regular surveys and community forums.
- Continuous Monitoring: Post-deployment system monitoring with alerts and notifications.
- Escalation Procedures: Clear paths for issue escalation and regular review meetings.
- Regular Reporting: Track support metrics and generate regular reports.
- Continuous Improvement: Learn from issues to improve the product and update resources.
- User Training and Resources: Offer training sessions and ensure access to helpful resources.
- Ticketing System: Implement a system for users to report issues and raise complaints.


## 8. Support and Training

### 8.1 User Training

8.1.1 User Training Requirements: Training for players, administrators, and organizers is crucial for effective portal usage.
8.1.2 Prerequisites: The portal should be intuitive, requiring no specific prerequisites or advanced knowledge for access.

### 8.2 Training Materials

8.2.1 Types of Materials: User guides, video tutorials, and interactive demos will be provided.
8.2.2 Development and Accessibility: Materials will be developed to be intuitive and made easily accessible to users.

### 8.3 Training Delivery Methods

8.3.1 Delivery Channels: Training will be delivered through various methods, including in-person sessions, webinars, and online courses.
8.3.2 Self-Paced Learning: The option for self-paced learning will be considered.

### 8.4 Administrator Training

8.4.1 Training for FIDE Administrators: Extensive training covering portal navigation, content management, user account management, data management, security, compliance, analytics, reporting, communication, and event management.
8.4.2 Documentation: Includes user manuals, quick reference guides, FAQs, best practices, and change logs.
8.4.3 Ongoing Training: Regular updates and feedback loops for continuous learning and improvement.

### 8.5 User Support Channel

8.5.1 Support Access: Users can access support via designated channels, such as a helpdesk, ticketing system, email, or technical chatbots.
8.5.2 Designated Channels: An established support channel like a helpdesk or email support is anticipated.

### 8.6 Support Response Time

8.6.1 Response Times: Expected response times will be set, prioritising support requests based on urgency.
8.6.2 Service Level Agreements (SLAs): SLAs or response time targets will be established.

### 8.7 Feedback and Improvement

8.7.1 Feedback Collection and Management: Methods include online surveys, feedback widgets, interviews, social media monitoring, and email feedback.
8.7.2 Feedback Analysis and Action Plans: Regular reviews, impact analysis, and action plans will be developed based on feedback.
8.7.3 User Involvement and Communication: Involving users in beta testing and keeping them informed about feedback status and updates.
8.7.4 Integration with Development: Incorporating feedback into the development roadmap and using an agile approach for continuous improvement.

### 8.8 Continuous Training and Updates

8.8.1 Ongoing Training and Support: Continuous training and support as the portal evolves will be considered.
8.8.2 Informing Users of Updates: Users will be informed of changes and updates, potentially via email, and additional training will be provided, as necessary.

### 8.9 User Engagement and Community Building

8.9.1 Community Engagement Strategies: Utilization of forums, discussion boards, or social media groups to build a sense of community among users.
8.9.2 Sharing Success Stories: User success stories and best practices will be shared to enhance user adoption and satisfaction.

### 8.10 Multilingual Support

8.10.1 Language Availability: Support and training materials will primarily be in English, with potential for multilingual support in the future.
8.10.2 Managing Language Preferences: Language preferences will be managed within the portal to provide localized support, initially focusing on English with scope for future development in multiple languages.

## 9. Future Enhancements

### 9.1 User Feedback and Prioritization

9.1.1 Feedback Collection: Feedback and feature requests will be collected through established channels and categorized for analysis.
9.1.2 Mechanisms for Submission: Users will have the means to submit ideas and suggestions for portal improvements.

### 9.2 Feature Roadmap

9.2.1 Future Enhancements Plan: A roadmap or plan for future portal enhancements is considered, structured around FIDE's calendar and portal goals.
9.2.2 Prioritization Criteria: Features will be selected based on their alignment with portal objectives and user needs.

### 9.3 User Experience Improvements

9.3.1 UX Enhancements: Specific user experience enhancements, such as redesigns or improved navigation, are anticipated.
9.3.2 Refining Usability: User testing and feedback will play a key role in refining and enhancing the portal's usability.

### 9.4 Integration and Compatibility

9.4.1 Integration Expansion: Plans to expand integration capabilities with external systems are considered.
9.4.2 Maintaining Compatibility: The portal will adhere to best practices and industry standards to maintain compatibility with evolving technologies.

### 9.5 Security and Compliance Updates

9.5.1 Security Enhancements: Regular security audits, vulnerability scanning, patch management, and continuous monitoring will be implemented.
9.5.2 Data Privacy Regulation Changes: The portal will adapt to changes in data privacy regulations, maintaining compliance through regular audits and updates.

### 9.6 Scalability and Performance Improvements

9.6.1 Scalability Measures: The portal will adopt a scalable architecture, database optimization, cloud-based solutions, and performance monitoring.
9.6.2 Performance Optimization: Continuous monitoring and adjustment of API performance will ensure efficiency.

### 9.7 Mobile and Multi-Platform Support

9.7.1 Mobile Accessibility: Enhancements to mobile accessibility and responsive design for different devices are planned.
9.7.2 Multi-Platform Support: Comprehensive support for various platforms, including iOS, Android, and web browsers, is considered.

### 9.8 Analytics and Reporting Enhancements

9.8.1 Improving Analytics: Integration with modern tools like Tableau and PowerBI will enhance analytics and reporting capabilities.
9.8.2 Data-Driven Features: Introduction of data-driven features and dashboards is anticipated.

### 9.9 Community and User Engagement Features

9.9.1 Community-Building Features: New features like forums, discussion boards, and social media integrations may be introduced.
9.9.2 Refining Engagement Strategies: User engagement and retention strategies will be continuously refined.

### 9.10 Internationalization and Localization

9.10.1 Supporting Additional Languages: Efforts to support more languages and cultural adaptations are planned.
9.10.2 Accommodating Regional Preferences: The portal will evolve to accommodate regional preferences and requirements based on user feedback and administrator experience.

## 10. Phased Approach - Charting the Road Ahead

This section outlines a strategic, phased approach to developing the Tournament Entry Portal, ensuring that each step is methodically planned and executed.

### 10.1 Comprehensive Data and Process Analysis:

In-depth Examination of Current State:

### 10.1.1 Process Evaluation:

1. Thoroughly review existing processes, systems, and infrastructure to understand current operational workflows and identify areas for improvement.
2. Gather any source documents used by current FIDE staff, historical organizers.
3. Interview organizers of the past Olympiads.
10.1.2 Resource Inventory:

- Data Assessment: Catalogue and assess the existing data types, volumes, and usage patterns.
- Database Structure Review: Analyse the current database architecture,
including schema design, data relationships, and storage practices.
- Technology Audit: Evaluate the technology stack in use, including software, platforms, and tools.
10.1.3

Capacity Analysis:

- Server Capabilities: Determine server specifications, including size, capacity, and performance metrics.
- Traffic Analysis: Measure and understand daily traffic patterns, peak usage times, and bandwidth requirements.
- Additional Considerations: Identify other critical factors such as data security, backup mechanisms, and disaster recovery plans.


### 10.2 Vendor Evaluation and Functionality Matrix:

Desktop Study for Vendor Assessment:

- Conduct a comprehensive study to evaluate if potential third-party vendors align with minimum requirements, desired functionalities, and the scope for future enhancements.
- Develop a functionality matrix that clearly outlines the capabilities and limitations of each vendor, facilitating informed decision-making.


### 10.3 Cost Estimation and Financial Planning:

10.3.1 Financial Projections for Portal Development:

- Basic Portal Costs: Estimate the investment required for the initial development of a basic tournament entry portal.
- Mandatory Functionalities: Calculate costs associated with integrating essential additional functionalities identified during the analysis phase.
10.3.2 Future Enhancement Budgeting: Project the financial implications of integrating advanced features and capabilities in subsequent phases.


### 10.4 Decision-Making on Development Approach

10.4.1 Evaluating Options:

- Third-Party Solution: Assess if there is a suitable third-party vendor that can meet the requirements and expectations for the system.
- In-House Development: Consider the feasibility, resources, and expertise
required for developing the system in-house.
10.4.2 Informed Decision: Based on the analysis, cost estimates, and strategic alignment, make a well-informed decision on whether to proceed with a third-party solution or to opt for in-house development.


### 10.5 Implementation Roadmap

- Phased Roll-Out Plan: Develop a detailed implementation roadmap with clear milestones, timelines, and deliverables for each phase of the project.
- Stakeholder Engagement: Continuously engage with all relevant stakeholders throughout the development process for feedback, support, and alignment.
- Risk Management: Identify potential risks associated with each phase and devise mitigation strategies to ensure smooth project execution.


### 10.6 Continuous Monitoring and Evaluation

- Performance Tracking: Establish mechanisms for ongoing monitoring of the project's progress against set benchmarks and goals.
- Feedback Loops: Implement regular feedback loops to gather insights from users and stakeholders, allowing for agile adjustments and improvements.

By adopting this phased approach, the project aims to create a robust, scalable, and user-centric Tournament Entry Portal that aligns with FIDE's strategic objectives and user needs.


[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ Later amended in https://chessresults.ru/en/copp, which is the official Internet address of the program to be endorsed.

